

# Outcomes of the curriculum

أهداف المنهج (جميع الوحدات)



## Unit 7

**Lesson 1** : To read short texts to find specific information.

**Lesson 2** : To form and use the simple verb tenses.

**Lesson 3** : To use simple questions forms.

**Lesson 4** : To write a description of a day in someone's life.

**Lesson 5** : To describe characters, setting and major events in a story using key details.

**Lesson 6** : To understand the language features of a specific type of text.

**Lesson 7** : To ask and answer questions about your weekend.

## Unit 8

**Lesson 1** : To form and use present simple questions about measurements.  
To say large numbers correctly.

**Lesson 2** : To use adjectives to describe places.

**Lesson 3** : To use the superlative form of adjectives.

**Lesson 4** : To ask someone for their opinion and agree or disagree with it.

**Lesson 5** : To read short texts to find specific information.

**Lesson 6** : To write an opinion piece.

**Lesson 7** : To write an email to a friend about your best holiday (workbook).

## Unit 9

**Lesson 1** : To read a range of high-frequency words.

**Lesson 2** : To use context to confirm or self-correct word recognition and understanding, rereading as necessary.

**Lesson 3** : To read and respond to short explanatory texts.

**Lesson 4** : To identify a text type from its format and appearance.

**Lesson 5** : To express facts, points of view, hopes and aspirations.

**Lesson 6** : To write descriptions giving examples.

**Lesson 7** : To review and use the vocabulary and structures of the unit.



## Unit 10

**Lesson 1** : To gather information from provided sources to answer a question.

**Lesson 2** : To express facts.

**Lesson 3** : To take turns speaking about the topics and texts under discussion.

**Lesson 4** : To answer such questions as who, what, where, when, why, and how to demonstrate understanding of key details in a text.

**Lesson 5** : To explain orally verbal and non-verbal age appropriate texts.

**Lesson 6** : To read and respond to short explanatory texts.

**Lesson 7** : To write a description of your school.

## Unit 11

**Lesson 1** : To describe sea animals.  
To use the zero conditional.

**Lesson 2** : To use regular and irregular verbs.  
To interpret non-verbal reading texts.

**Lesson 3** : To identify gist and main idea(s) in short listening texts.

**Lesson 4** : To ask and answer questions in order to seek help, get information, or clarify something that is not understood.

**Lesson 5** : To read a simple short story or biography and express a basic opinion about characters or the plot.

**Lesson 6** : To skim grade appropriate text to get the general idea.

**Lesson 7** : To pronounce familiar words with some accuracy.

## Unit 12

**Lesson 1** : To research information about a scientist.

**Lesson 2** : To use question tags.  
To ask and answer questions in order to clarify something.

**Lesson 3** : To demonstrate understanding of key details in a text.

**Lesson 4** : To use critical thinking to discuss an issue.

**Lesson 5** : To express facts, points of view, hopes and aspirations.

**Lesson 6** : To plan texts orally.

**Lesson 7** : To make a poster about a job.



# Contents

<b>Unit 7</b>	How was your weekend ?	page 12
<b>Unit 8</b>	The amazing world around us	page 64
<b>Unit 9</b>	Adventure !	page 114
<b>Review C</b>		page 165
<b>Unit 10</b>	Welcome to my home !	page 176
<b>Unit 11</b>	On land and sea	page 221
<b>Unit 12</b>	My future	page 271
<b>Review D</b>		page 322

**Time Saving**

**Plan B**

طريقة أخرى جديدة للشرح (اختيارية للمعلم) تضمن سرعة الانتهاء من المنهج في الوقت المحدد بشكل يجمع بين البساطة والشمولية لاكتساب جميع المهارات المطلوبة. في

**Quick Look**





# Unit

# 7

SB pages 2:11 WB pages 70:76

## How was your weekend ?



### Objectives

#### • Reading :

A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe

#### • Writing :

A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day

#### • Listening :

An interview with a musician

#### • Speaking :

Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

#### • Language :

Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with although and because

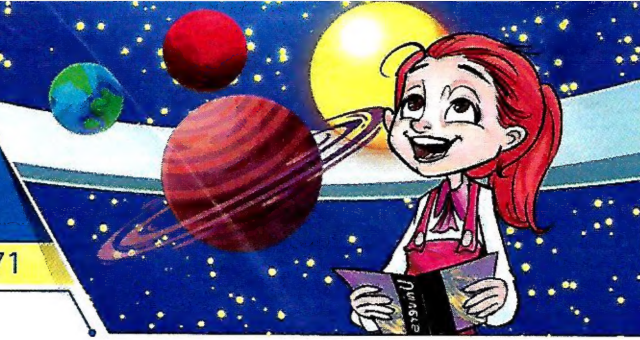
#### • Life Skills :

Making decisions

- يمكنك استخدام فكرة Time saving -  
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب -

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب  
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات





## I

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

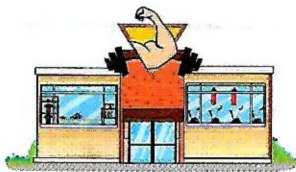
aquarium (n)

متحف الأحياء المائية / حوض أسماك



sports centre (n)

مركز رياضي



funfair (n) مدينة الملاهي



planetarium (n)

القبة السماوية / مرصد فلكي



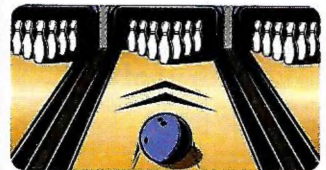
football stadium (n)

ستاد كرة القدم



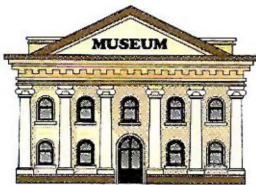
bowling alley (n)

صالة البولينج



museum (n)

متحف



big wheel (n)

العجلة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي)



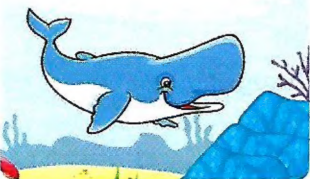
nervous (adj)

متوتر / عصبى



whale (n)

حوت



team (n)

فريق



statue (n)

تمثال





## Key Vocabulary

weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	diary (n)	مفكرة (يوميات)
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	school uniform (n)	الزي المدرسي
exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض	school canteen (n)	مقصف المدرسة (كانتين)

## Lesson 1

SB pages 2 &amp; 3 WB page 70

shark (n)	سمكة قرش	stars (n)	نجوم
closed (adj)	مغلق	bowling (n)	البولينج (لعبة الكرات الخشبية)
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	restaurant (n)	مطعم
dolphin (n)	دولفين	haircut (n)	قصة الشعر
arrive (d) (v)	يصل	moon (n)	قمر
breakfast (n)	وجبة الإفطار	dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء

## Lesson 2

SB pages 4 &amp; 5 WB page 71

move (d) (v)	ينتقل - ينقل	decision (n)	قرار
shopping (n)	التسوق	aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر ...
hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يتمنى	option (n)	اختيار
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة	salad (n)	سلطة
fantastic (adj)	رائع	determine (d) (v)	يحدد
activities (n)	أنشطة	challenge (d) (v) , (n)	يتحدى / تحدى
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	select (ed) (v)	يختار
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما - تمامًا	solution (n)	حل
lunch (n)	وجبة الغداء	history (n)	تاريخ
great (adj)	رائع - عظيم	park (n)	حديقة عامة
fun (n)	متعة		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride يركب	rode	ridden
feel يشعر	felt	felt
think يعتقد	thought	thought
take يأخذ / يستغرق	took	taken
sit يجلس	sat	sat
know يعرف	knew	known



drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
win	يفوز	won	won
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
leave	يفادر / يرحل	left	left
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
write	يكتب	wrote	written

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
nervous	متوتر / عصبى	quiet / relaxed	هادئ / مسترخ
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
dark	ظلام	light	ضوء
effective	فعال / مؤثر	ineffective	غير فعال / غير مؤثر
like	يحب	dislike	يكره
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	سئ / فظيع

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>aquarium</b>	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water	متحف الأحياء المائية
<b>bowling alley</b>	a place where you can go bowling	صالة بولينج
<b>canteen</b>	a dining room in an office, building or school	كانتين (مطعم) / (مقصف المدرسة)
<b>funfair</b>	a park with fun rides and games	مدينة ملاهي
<b>museum</b>	a building to keep and display important things from the past	متحف

<b>planetarium</b>	an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets	مرصد فلكي / قبة سماوية
<b>sports centre</b>	a place where you can do sports indoors	مركز رياضي
<b>stadium</b>	a place where you can play or watch sports matches	استاد رياضي
<b>nervous</b>	worried or frightened about something	متوتر / عصبى

### Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk <b>about</b>	يتحدث عن	quite nervous	متوتر إلى حد ما
ride <b>on</b> the big wheel	يركب على المراجيح الدوارة	<b>at</b> the end of ...	فى نهاية ...
look <b>at</b> the stars	ينظر الى النجوم	It was a lot of fun	كان ممتعاً جداً
move <b>to</b> a new house	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد	work with	يعمل / يتعامل مع
It took 3 hours <b>to</b> ...	استغرق ثلاث ساعات لـ ..	decide to ...	يقرر أن ...
frightened <b>of</b>	خائف من	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
make things	يصنع الأشياء	aged five	بالغ من العمر خمس سنوات
the best solution for	أفضل حل لـ	on the other side of the town	على الجانب الآخر من المدينة
take the bus to city	يستقل الأتوبيس إلى المدينة	eat out	يتناول الطعام بالخارج (فى مطعم)
in order to + inf. ...	لكى ...	like being outside	يحب أن يكون بالخارج
		come home	يعود إلى المنزل

### Collocations

### متلازمات لفظية

have breakfast / lunch	يتناول وجبة الإفطار / الغداء	go shopping	يتسوق
have a maths lesson	لديه حصة رياضيات	listen to music	يستمتع للموسيقى
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	have a haircut	يعمل قصة شعر
go on the big wheel	يركب المراجيح الدوارة	meet my best friend	أقابل صديقي المفضل
go bowling	يلعب لعبة البولينج	do different things	يقوم بأشياء مختلفة
go to bed early	يذهب للفراش مبكراً	do the same things	يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء
have a fantastic weekend	يقضى اجازة رائعة	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلى
		do a sport	يمارس رياضة



## II

## Reading and listening

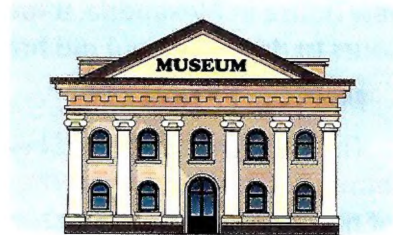


## Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 3 .

**Narrator** : Listen to Dina talk about her birthday.

**Dina** : It was my birthday<sup>(1)</sup> last Saturday so I went to the museum<sup>(2)</sup> with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues<sup>(3)</sup>. We learned a lot. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair<sup>(4)</sup> but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too! And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium<sup>(5)</sup> but it was closed<sup>(6)</sup>. So we took a bus to the aquarium<sup>(7)</sup> on the other side of<sup>(8)</sup> town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark<sup>(9)</sup>!



## Check Vocabulary

(1) عيد ميلاد	(2) متحف	(3) تماثيل	(4) مدينة الملاهي	(5) مرصد فلكي
(6) مغلق	(7) متحف الأحياء المائية	(8) الجانب الآخر من	(9) سمكة قرش	



# Reading

## on Lesson 2 SB page 4

- 1 Read Adam's diary<sup>(1)</sup>. What do you think the word nervous<sup>(2)</sup> means and why does Adam feel this?

### Sunday 8<sup>th</sup> May

Yesterday our family moved to<sup>(3)</sup> our new house in Alexandria. It took<sup>(4)</sup> three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.



### Monday 9<sup>th</sup> May

This morning, mum and I went shopping<sup>(5)</sup> to buy a new school uniform<sup>(6)</sup> for me. I hope students are friendly<sup>(7)</sup> in my new school!



### Tuesday 10<sup>th</sup> May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen<sup>(8)</sup>.

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) مفكرة يوميات	(2) متوتر / عصبى	(3) انتقل إلى	(4) استغرق
(5) ذهب للتسوق	(6) زي مدرسى	(7) ودود	(8) المقصف المدرسى (الكانتین)

## on Lesson 2 SB page 4

- 2 Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?

### Monday 16<sup>th</sup> May

What a fantastic<sup>(1)</sup> weekend<sup>(2)</sup>! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football, in the park. I don't usually like football but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, mum helped me with my homework. Then dad and I went to the sports centre<sup>(3)</sup>. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool<sup>(4)</sup>.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) رائع	(2) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	(3) مركز رياضي	(4) حمام سباحة
----------	------------------------	----------------	----------------



• on Lesson 2 wB page 71

I had a fantastic weekend!

It was my friend Dalia's birthday<sup>(1)</sup> and her family took us to some exciting<sup>(2)</sup> places. In the morning, we went to the funfair<sup>(3)</sup>. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum<sup>(4)</sup>. We saw some very old statues<sup>(5)</sup>. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history<sup>(6)</sup>! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late<sup>(7)</sup>!



Check Vocabulary

(1) عيد ميلاد (2) مثيرة (3) مدينة ملاهي (4) متحف (5) تماثيل قديمة جدًا (6) تاريخ (7) متأخر جدًا



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 exhibition - exhibit

\* exhibition (n) عرض / معرض (للفنون أو التحف والتماثيل)

ex.: - I saw an exhibition about dolphins.

\* exhibit (n) المعارض (التحف أو التماثيل المعروض)

ex.: - I saw a lot of exhibits in the Egyptian Museum such as coins and statues.

### 2 go + (activity + ing)

لاحظ غالبًا ما يأتي هذا الفعل مع الأنشطة والرياضات المضاف لها (ing)

ex.: - I went bowling.

- She goes shopping every Friday.

### 3 funfair - fair

\* funfair (n) مدينة ملاهي

ex.: - Dream Park is one of the most fantastic funfairs in Cairo.

\* fair (n) معرض

ex.: - I go to the Cairo Book Fair every year.



**4 quite (adv)**

(بمعنى (إلى حد ما) وتستخدم بعدها صفة (تبين درجة الصفة)

**ex.:** - She is quite nervous.**5 frightened of (inf. + ing) / noun**

خائف من

**ex.:** - He is frightened of the dark.

- She is frightened of crossing the road.

**6 like / love (inf. + ing) / noun.**

أفعال تستخدم بمعنى (يحب)

**ex.:** - He likes going to the zoo.

- She loves flowers.

**7****لاحظ أن :** جميع أسماء الرياضات لا تأخذ (a , an , the)**ex.:** - **SB** I played tennis.

- Do you like football ?

أما إذا استخدمت تلك الألعاب الرياضية كصفات تستخدم (a , an , the) قبلها حسب الجملة :

**ex.:** - **SB** I watched a football match yesterday.

- The tennis match I played yesterday was exciting.

**8 hear - listen****\* hear (v)**

(يسمع (تدل على القدرة على الاستماع بدون إنتباه (حاسة السمع)

**ex.:** - Can bats hear ?**\* listen to (v)**

ينصت إلى (تدل على الانتباه والإصغاء باهتمام)

**ex.:** - Good students should listen to their teachers.**9 move****\* move**

يُحرك / يتحرك

**ex.:** - Please, move this chair away, Basem.

- Trees move in the wind.

**\* move to**

ينتقل إلى مسكن جديد

**ex.:** **SB** Yesterday, our family moved to a new house in Alexandria.

### 10 have

لاحظ أن : الفعل (have) له عدة معانٍ مختلفة

\* have = own

يستخدم بمعنى يمتلك

ex.: - My father has a blue car.

\* have = eat

يستخدم بمعنى يأكل

ex.: - I have lunch in the school canteen.

\* have = drink

يستخدم بمعنى يشرب

ex.: - I have juice after meals.

### 11 sport - sports

ملحوظة :

\* sport (n)

تستخدم كاسم بمعنى رياضة

ex.: - My favourite sport is football.

\* sports (adj)

تستخدم كصفة بمعنى رياضي (متعلق بالأنشطة الرياضية)

ex.: - Ali is at the sports centre.

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I want to watch the match between Egypt and South Africa, so I will go to the .....  
a. court                      b. stadium                      c. playground                      d. funfair
- Salma is going to the ..... She loves riding on the big wheel.  
a. funfair                      b. planetarium                      c. sports centre                      d. aquarium
- I went to Helwan ..... to see the beautiful stars through the huge telescope.  
a. funfair                      b. stadium                      c. sports centre                      d. planetarium
- There are a lot of colourful fish in the .....  
a. swimming pool                      b. sports centre  
c. aquarium                      d. planetarium
- Don't forget to write the date of our meeting in your .....  
a. calendar                      b. dairy                      c. date                      d. diary
- In the science museum, I saw a/an ..... about dolphins.  
a. exhibition                      b. decision                      c. match                      d. bowling



7. Toka was very ..... about her exams, so she couldn't sleep.

- a. happy                      b. nervous                      c. pleased                      d. content

## Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Egyptian ..... is full of ancient statues and coins.

- a. School                      b. Museum                      c. Hospital                      d. Centre

2. The bowling ..... is a building where you can go bowling.

- a. ball                      b. alley                      c. bowler                      d. bowl

3. The big ..... is one of the fantastic rides in the funfair.

- a. wall                      b. whale                      c. wheel                      d. wing

4. No one lives in the Arctic القطب الشمالى .....

- a. Match                      b. Tree                      c. Area                      d. Wheel

5. There are very old ..... at the Egyptian Museum.

- a. centres                      b. statues                      c. pyramids                      d. temples

6. Samar, ..... thirteen, is in prep one this year.

- a. age                      b. aging                      c. aged                      d. ages

7. I went ..... yesterday morning. I bought a lot of groceries بقالة .

- a. shopping                      b. swimming                      c. bowling                      d. diving

8. I ..... a haircut two weeks ago.

- a. did                      b. took                      c. had                      d. made

9. **SB** It ..... three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

- a. talked                      b. had                      c. took                      d. spent

10. For school, I always wear a school .....

- a. uniform                      b. money                      c. research                      d. hobby

11. **WB** Hassan ..... to Cairo in 2019.

- a. moved                      b. waved                      c. gave                      d. did

12. A/An ..... is a dining room in an office, building or a school.

- a. aquarium                      b. city                      c. alley                      d. canteen



## Review on The Past Simple Tense مراجعة على زمن الماضي البسيط

### Formation التكوين

1

#### Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

(a) Regular verbs :

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

**Subject** الفاعل

+

التصريف الثانى للفعل

الفعل المنتهى ب :

e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y (حرف ساكن) + y	+ ied	carry → carried
y (حرف متحرك) + y	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	يضاف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

(b) Irregular verbs :

(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة (تحفظ) كما هي مثل :

الماضي	الفعل	الماضي	الفعل
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode



**لاحظ أن :** يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

**I / He / She / It** → **فاعل مفرد** → **was / wasn't**

**We / They / you** → **فاعل جمع** → **were / weren't**

- ex. - Mariam **was** frightened of the cave.  
- There **weren't** any cars on the beach.

◀ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

## 2 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

**Subject** **فاعل** + **didn't** + **inf.** **المصدر**

- ex. - He **didn't** study his lessons yesterday.  
- I **didn't** send an email to my friend last week.  
- She **didn't** go to the beach.

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

◀ في حالة السؤال باستخدام «هل» :

**Did** + **subject** **الفاعل** + **inf.** **المصدر** ?

- ex. - Did you clean the car ?  
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

## 3 Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

(b) Wh-questions : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

◀ في حالة السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

**question word** **كلمة الاستفهام** + **did** + **subject** **الفاعل** + **inf.** **المصدر** ..... ?

- ex. - What did you study ?  
- Where did she go ?

## ► Past time expressions

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

in the past في الماضي  
yesterday أمس  
this morning هذا الصباح  
in 1999 في عام ١٩٩٩  
in October في شهر أكتوبر

**last**

→ year السنة الماضية  
→ month الشهر الماضي  
→ week الأسبوع الماضي  
→ Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي

an hour منذ ساعة  
three days منذ ثلاثة أيام  
six months منذ ستة شهور  
four years منذ أربع سنوات

**ago**

## Usage الاستخدام

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في زمن الماضي.

ex.: - Maha helped her mother with her work last night.  
- She went to school two hours ago.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Abdallah had lunch with his brother Ali .....  
a. tomorrow      b. next week      c. yesterday      d. now
- Rokaya worked very hard and ..... very well in the exam.  
a. do      b. does      c. doing      d. did
- On Sunday 8<sup>th</sup> May, our family ..... to our new house in Alexandria.  
a. moved      b. moving      c. are moved      d. were moved
- We ..... lunch together in the school canteen this morning.  
a. is having      b. having      c. had      d. has



5. **WB** It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday .....  
 a. this morning    b. last morning    c. yesterday    d. tomorrow
6. Last October, I ..... my uncle and cousins in Cairo.  
 a. visit    b. visits    c. visited    d. visiting
7. How did you ..... when you started a new school ?  
 a. feels    b. felt    c. feel    d. feeling
8. Three days ago, Ali ..... to Alexandria with his family.  
 a. drive    b. drives    c. drove    d. is driving
9. My uncle ..... his car in 2002.  
 a. is buying    b. buy    c. buys    d. bought
10. .... you enjoy the game last week ? - Yes, I did.  
 a. Were    b. Are    c. Did    d. Do
11. Who did you ..... last night ?  
 a. sees    b. seen    c. saw    d. see
12. Mr Ayman didn't ..... the office early yesterday.  
 a. leaves    b. leave    c. left    d. leaving

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I have lunch with my friends yesterday. ( ..... )
2. This morning, mum and I go shopping. ( ..... )
3. I had a maths lesson two days last. ( ..... )
4. Did you ill yesterday ? ( ..... )
5. What places do you visit last weekend ? ( ..... )
6. Last night, I listen to music. ( ..... )

## IV Speaking Corner

### Talking about your weekend

الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

#### Stimulus ?

• When did you go to the funfair ?

- متى ذهبت إلى الملاهي ؟

• Where did you go last Sunday morning ?

- أين ذهبت الأحد الماضي صباحاً ؟

• Where did you have your dinner last Monday ?

- أين تناولت العشاء الاثنين الماضي ؟

#### Response ✓

- I went to the funfair last Saturday at 8 o'clock.

ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهي السبت الماضي في تمام الساعة الثامنة.

- I went to the planetarium.

ذهبت إلى القبة السماوية (المرصد الفلكي).

- I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday.

تناولت العشاء الاثنين الماضي في مطعم.

## V Writing

### Stop here !

الجملة الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

#### «How was your last weekend ?»

1. Last weekend, I went bowling. ١. لعبت لعبة البولينج في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.
2. I rode on the big wheel. ٢. ركبت لعبة عجلة الملاهي الدوارة.
3. I saw an exhibition about dolphins. ٣. رأيت معرض عن الدرافيل.
4. I had dinner in a restaurant. ٤. تناولت العشاء في مطعم.

#### «Moving to a new house»

1. I moved to a new house with my family. ١. انتقلت إلى منزل جديد مع عائلتي.
2. I went shopping to buy a new school uniform. ٢. ذهبت للتسوق لشراء زي مدرسي جديد.
3. I was quite nervous. ٣. كنت عصبى إلى حد ما.
4. I sat next to a friendly boy. ٤. جلست بجانب ولد ودود.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Dad is good at .....  
a. swimming      b. football      c. riding      d. basketball
2. Mum's ..... are delicious.  
a. foods      b. cookies      c. salads      d. cakes
3. My ..... likes making things.  
a. dad      b. mum      c. sister      d. brother
4. Dad likes .....  
a. sports      b. salad      c. cooking      d. fishing

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : What did you do last weekend ?

Ashraf : I went to the (1) .....

Ayman : The funfair ! That's fantastic.

Ashraf : Which ride did you (2) ..... most ?

Ayman : I loved the big (3) .....

Ashraf : How (4) ..... was the ticket for the big wheel ?

Ayman : It (5) ..... 20 pounds.

Ashraf : Fantastic ! What else did you do ?

Ayman : I ate some popcorn.

Ashraf : That's my favourite!

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I ..... breakfast with my family yesterday.  
a. spent      b. played      c. talked      d. had
2. Last week, we ..... to a new house in Tanta.  
a. moved      b. made      c. saw      d. grew
3. Adults usually ..... good decisions.  
a. deliver      b. spend      c. make      d. do

4. **WB** The balls are heavy at the ..... .  
a. bowling alley                      b. swimming pool  
c. stadium                                d. handball ground
5. We buy candies حلوى and chips from the school ..... .  
a. box                      b. canteen                  c. factory                  d. library
6. Most Egyptians are kind and ..... .  
a. friendly                  b. irregular                c. wild                      d. hard
7. A ..... is an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets.  
a. sports centre          b. planetarium          c. swimming pool      d. funfair
8. How ..... your day yesterday ? - It was nice.  
a. were                      b. was                      c. is                         d. did
9. We ..... in the swimming pool last month.  
a. swim                      b. swam  
c. was swimming                      d. are swimming
10. What did you ..... for lunch yesterday ?  
a. ate                         b. eating                    c. eats                      d. eat

**4** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Two days ago, she is in hospital. ( ..... )
2. Where did you went yesterday ? ( ..... )
3. We climbed the mountain next night. ( ..... )
4. I have a wonderful time at the zoo this morning. ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

**مَجَاب عَنْهُ فِي نَهَايَةِ الْكِتَابِ**

**"How was your weekend ?"**

[illegible]





# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

musician (n) موسيقار



island (n) جزيرة



sailor (n) بحار



storm (n) عاصفة



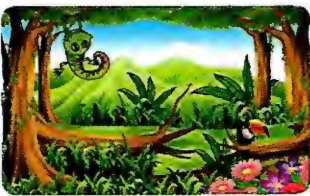
coconut (n) جوز الهند



cave (n) كهف



jungle (n) أدغال - غابة



rocks (n) صخور



beach (n) شاطئ



ship (n) سفينة



trumpet (n) آلة البوق



sand (n) رمال



## Key Vocabulary

interview (ed) (v), (n) يجرى حوار / مقابلة رسمية (شخصية)	opinion (n) رأى
interviewer (n) مهاور (من يقوم بتوجيه الأسئلة في المقابلة الشخصية)	

## Types of music

### أنواع الموسيقى

jazz موسيقى الجاز	opera الأوبرا (الحن وحوار)
classical الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	pop موسيقى البوب
rock موسيقى الروك (الصاخبة)	traditional music الموسيقى التقليدية

## Lesson 3

SB pages 6 &amp; 7 WB page 72

type (n) نوع	share (d) (v) يشارك
sound (ed) (v), (n) يبدو - صوت (شئ)	stress (ed) (v) يشدد الحرف (على كلمة أو مقطع)
voice (n) صوت (بشرى)	jacket (n) جاكت

## Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

adventure (n) مغامرة	dead (adj) ميت
terrible (adj) رهيب / فظيع	rain (ed) (v), (n) تمطر / مطر
nearby (adj) قريب	prefer (red) (v) يفضل
arrive (d) (v) يصل	through (prep) خلال
alone (adj), (adv) وحده / بمفرده	nut (n) حبة مكسرات - بندق
shapes (n) أشكال	glass (n) زجاج
without (prep) بدون	nobody (pron) لا أحد
entry (n) دخول - مقدمة	

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
rise يرتفع / يعلو	rose	risen
fall يسقط / ينخفض	fell	fallen
sink يغرق	sank	sunk
find يجد	found	found
swim يسبح	swam	swam



## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
rise	ينخفض
end	بداية
sink	يطفو
nearby	بعيد
dead	على قيد الحياة / حي
	fall
	beginning / start
	float
	far away
	alive

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

alone	not with other people	بمفرده
classical music	a type of serious music played by people like Mozart	موسيقى كلاسيكية
coconut	large brown nuts	جوز هند
jazz	a type of music first played by black Americans	موسيقى الجاز
opera	a type of music where actors sing the words of a story	الأوبرا
pop music	a type of popular music	موسيقى البوب
rock music	a type of popular music usually played with electric guitars	موسيقى الروك
sailor	someone who works on a boat or a ship	بحار
sink	go down into water	يغوص (الأشياء)
terrible	very bad	رهيب
traditional	using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago	تقليدي

**Important expressions & prepositions**

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

an interview <b>with</b> ...	مقابلة شخصية مع ...	Remember to + inf.	تذكر أن ...
play the piano	يعزف البيانو	<b>on</b> the island	على الجزيرة
write down	يدون (ملاحظات)	walk along ...	يمشي باستقامة / بطول ...
in each question	في كل سؤال	walk through	يمشي خلال
share ... <b>with</b>	يتشارك .. مع	sleep on a bed	ينام في الفراش
have different opinions	لديه آراء مختلفة	without any people	بدون أي أشخاص
go <b>down into</b>	ينخفض / يهبط إلى	want <b>to</b> + inf.	يريد أن ...
it is good for you	إنه جيد بالنسبة لك	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
it is difficult to + inf.	إنه من الصعب أن .....	<b>at</b> the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
What happened ?	ماذا حدث ؟	look for	يبحث عن

**II****Reading and Listening****Listening**

Lesson 3 SB page 6

**Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar.**

**Interviewer :** Marvin Allstar is a famous<sup>(1)</sup> musician<sup>(2)</sup>. He writes songs and plays in a band<sup>(3)</sup>. Hello, Marvin, what type of music do you like ?

**Marvin :** Hello. Well, I like jazz music<sup>(4)</sup> best. I play the trumpet<sup>(5)</sup> in a jazz band.

**Check Vocabulary**

(1) مشهور (2) موسيقار (3) فرقة موسيقية (4) موسيقى الجاز (5) آلة البوق



**Interviewer** : The trumpet ? When did you learn to play the trumpet ?

**Marvin** : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved on to<sup>(6)</sup> the trumpet at 12. I like the sound<sup>(7)</sup> of the trumpet.

**Interviewer** : Amazing! Do you like pop music<sup>(8)</sup> ?

**Marvin** : No, I don't, and I don't like rock music<sup>(9)</sup>. But I quite like traditional<sup>(10)</sup> music.

### Check Vocabulary

(6) انتقل إلى

(7) صوت

(8) موسيقى البوب

(9) موسيقى الروك

(10) تقليدي



## Videoscript

### on Lesson 3

There are lots of different styles of music ...

... such as classical ... jazz ...

... and opera. Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida, by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871 ?

Hakim is a very popular singer. He sings to modern and traditional music. This style<sup>(1)</sup> of music is called Geel.

Hakim is famous in Egypt and other countries around the world.

You can often hear music at weddings<sup>(2)</sup> and other celebrations<sup>(3)</sup>.

Egypt also has a lot of traditional music. You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan.

In traditional music you can hear instruments<sup>(4)</sup> like drums and the ney<sup>(5)</sup>. The ney is a type of flute.

Another traditional instrument is the qanun<sup>(6)</sup>. This is a string instrument<sup>(7)</sup> that you play with your fingers. You can also hear the violin ...

... and the oud<sup>(8)</sup>. The oud is similar to the guitar, but it usually has more strings.

You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.

Do you like music ? What styles of music do you like ?

### Check Vocabulary

(1) أسلوب

(2) حفلات الزفاف

(3) احتفالات

(4) آلات موسيقية

(5) آلة الناي

(6) آلة القانون

(7) آلة وترية

(8) آلة العود



## Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 8 .

**Robinson Crusoe** is an adventure<sup>(1)</sup> story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor<sup>(2)</sup>. One day his ship sank<sup>(3)</sup> because there was a really terrible storm<sup>(4)</sup>. Crusoe swam to a nearby<sup>(5)</sup> island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary<sup>(6)</sup> of what happened to him on the island.



### 18<sup>th</sup> December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone<sup>(7)</sup>. This afternoon I found a dead<sup>(8)</sup> fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!



### 19<sup>th</sup> December

I found a coconut<sup>(9)</sup> on the beach today. It was delicious<sup>(10)</sup>. It rained last night and I was cold and wet<sup>(11)</sup>, so today I went to look for a cave<sup>(12)</sup>. I want a warm<sup>(13)</sup> place to sleep. I walked through a jungle<sup>(14)</sup> and there were some rocks<sup>(15)</sup>, but no caves.

### 20<sup>th</sup> December

I found a cave !!

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) مغامرة	(2) بحار	(3) غرق / غاص	(4) عاصفة شديدة	(5) قريب	(6) مفكرة (يوميات)	(7) بمفرده	(8) ميت
(9) جوز الهند	(10) لذيذ	(11) مبتل	(12) كهف	(13) دافئ	(14) أدغال (غابة كثيفة)	(15) صخور	



## General Notes on Reading and Listening

### 1 learn - teach

\* learn (v) to + inf. / noun.

يَتَعَلَّم (يَتَّبَع بِمَصْدَرِ الْفِعْلِ أَوْ اسْم)

**ex.:** - He learned to play the piano.

- He learns English at school.

\* teach (v)

يُعَلِّم - يُدْرَس

teach + (noun) اسم

**ex.:** - He teaches maths at Cairo Prep School.

teach + (obj) مفعول to + inf.

**ex.:** - He teaches me to play the piano.

### 2 The different meanings of the verb "rise"

لاحظ المعاني المختلفة للفاعل (rise)

**ex.:** - The sun rises in the morning.

تَشْرُق (الشمس)

- The voice usually rises at the end of the Yes/No question. يعلو / يرتفع

- Ahmed rises at nine o'clock in the morning. ينهض (من الفراش)

### 3 die - dead - deadly

\* die (v)

يموت

**ex.:** - She died of a heart attack.

\* dead (adj)

ميت

**ex.:** - Crusoe found a dead fish and ate it.

\* deadly (adj)

مميت / قاتل

**ex.:** - Cancer is a deadly disease.

### 4

جميع الآلات الموسيقية تُسَبِّق بـ the بعد الفعل play بمعنى يعزف.

**ex.:** - **SB** He learned to play the piano when he was 8.

**5 What kind ... ? = What type ... ?**

ما نوع ... ؟

**ex.:** - **SB** What type of music do you like ?

**6 diary - dairy**

\* **diary**

مذكرة - مفكرة

**ex.:** - **SB** Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island.

\* **dairy**

معمل ألبان / خاص بمنتجات الألبان

**ex.:** - I went to the dairy to buy milk and cheese.

- Cheese is an important dairy product.

**7 alone - lonely**

\* **alone**

بمفرده

**ex.:** - His wife died and he lived alone.

\* **lonely**

وحيد - حزين

**ex.:** - I feel lonely. = I feel sad.

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The land that is surrounded by water from all sides is called  
a / an .....  
a. valley      b. island      c. area      d. mountain
- A ..... is a hole in the mountain.  
a. sea      b. river      c. cave      d. hill
- My uncle works as a / an ..... on a big ship.  
a. sailor      b. farmer      c. architect      d. carpenter
- ..... is a kind of music.  
a. Jazz      b. Gas      c. Metal      d. Plastic



5. There was a really terrible ..... and the ship sank.  
a. sea                      b. river                      c. storm                      d. work
6. A ..... is a place where there are a lot of thick trees and grass.  
a. desert                      b. jungle                      c. hill                      d. mountain
7. **WB** I like ....., but it is difficult to open them!  
a. coconuts                      b. beans                      c. apples                      d. carrots
8. You should respect other's .....  
a. clothes                      b. opinions                      c. fights                      d. shoes
9. The ..... is my favourite musical instrument.  
a. hammer                      b. trumpet                      c. saw                      d. thermometer

## Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** He learned to ..... the piano when he was five.  
a. spend                      b. do                      c. make                      d. play
2. A / An ..... is the person who asks questions during an interview.  
a. customer                      b. interviewee                      c. interviewer                      d. waiter
3. When the car stopped, I walked ..... the jungle for 3 hours.  
a. through                      b. over                      c. during                      d. forward
4. I ..... a room with my brother.  
a. divide                      b. spend                      c. share                      d. walk
5. The opposite of ..... is "far away".  
a. towards                      b. nearby                      c. next                      d. forwards
6. The food is ..... I can't eat it.  
a. delicious                      b. good                      c. terrible                      d. tasty
7. "Robinson Crusoe" is a / an ..... story by Daniel Defoe. It's exciting.  
a. adventure                      b. comic                      c. action                      d. horror

8. It ..... last night and I got wet.  
a. ran                      b. rained                      c. trained                      d. gained
9. Ahmed's ..... was weak because he had the flu.  
a. sound                      b. cheek                      c. voice                      d. hair
10. Ammar Al-Sheraei was a famous ..... He played lovely music.  
a. dentist                      b. interviewer                      c. musician                      d. singer
11. When something ....., it goes down into water.  
a. sinks                      b. floats                      c. swims                      d. dives



## Language

### Questions الأسئلة

There are two types of questions : هناك نوعان من الأسئلة :

#### 1 Yes / No questions

1 الأسئلة التي يجاب عليها بـ Yes أو No

- Yes / No questions start with an auxiliary verb (do , can , have) or the verb to be.

« تبدأ الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ (Yes / No) بالفعل المساعد (do, can,) (have) أو فعل (يكون)

- The voice usually rises at the end of the question.

« يرتفع صوت موجه السؤال عادة في نهاية السؤال.

- "V. to Be" (Am - IS - Are - Was - Were)
- "V. to Have" (Have - Has - Had)
- "V. to DO" (DO - DOES - Did)
- Will
- Can
- .... etc. الخ

+ subject + verb + .... ?  
الفاعل                      الفعل

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهي الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.



**ex.:** - Did you go to the park ?

Yes, I did.

No, I didn't.

- Have you got a phone ?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

- Can you speak English ?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

- Are you happy ?

Yes, I am.

No, I am not.

**ملحوظة :** يمكن استخدام "V. to Be" كفعل رئيسي في السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

**ex.:** - Are you happy about the result **نتيجة** of the match ?

Yes, I am.

No, I'm not.

## 2 Wh-questions → الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام :

► **Wh-questions** start with a question word.

The voice usually falls at the end of the question.

◀ السؤال بكلمات استفهام يبدأ بكلمة استفهام و ينخفض عادة صوت موجه السؤال في نهاية السؤال.

**question word**

كلمة الاستفهام

+

► "V. to Be"

► "V. to Have"

► "V. to DO"

► will

► can

► .... etc. الخ

+

**subject**

الفاعل

+

**verb**

الفعل

+

**.... ?**

**ex.** - What type of music does he like ?

He likes pop.

- When did you go to the museum ?

I went to the museum four days ago.

## لاحظ الآتي :

إذا كان الفعل في المضارع البسيط بدون (s).	do	←
إذا كان الفعل في المضارع البسيط وينتهي بـ (s)	does	←
أو (es) أو (ies).		
إذا كان الفعل في الماضي البسيط مع كل الضمائر.	did	←
	I, We	تحول → you
	my, our	تحول → your
	We are / I am	تحول → are you
	We were / I was	تحول → were you

## Question words

## كلمات الاستفهام

Whose ...?	ملك من...؟	How many ...?	كم للعدد...؟
When ...?	متى...؟	How high ...?	كم للارتفاع ...؟
What ...?	ما - ماذا ...؟	How deep ...?	كم للعمق ...؟
Who ...?	من (للفاعل العاقل) ...؟	How wide ...?	كم للعرض...؟
Whom ...?	من (للمفعول العاقل) ...؟	How far ...?	كم للبعد...؟
Why ...?	لماذا ...؟	How tall ...?	كم للطول...؟
Where ...?	أين ...؟	How heavy ...?	كم للوزن...؟
Which ...?	أيهما / أيهم ...؟	How long ...?	كم للمدة/للطول...؟
How ...?	كيف ...؟	How old ...?	كم للعمر...؟
How much ...?	كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟	How fast ...?	كم للسرعة...؟
How often ...?	كم مرة ...؟	Who ... with ...?	مع من ...؟

## Examples :

- What is he doing now ? \* He is reading a story.
- Who will you go to the club with ? \* I will go to the club with Ali.
- When did you see Nadia (her) ? \* I saw her last week.
- How does she go to school ? \* She goes to school by bus.
- Why do you go to the cinema ? \* I go to the cinema to see a film.
- How much did you pay for the watch ? \* I paid 200 pounds for it.
- How often do they go to the circus ? \* They go to the circus twice a month.
- Whose book is it ? \* It is mine.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... you tall ? - Yes, I am.  
a. Is                      b. Am                      c. Are                      d. Do
2. .... your friend got a computer ?  
a. Has                      b. Have                      c. Is                      d. Does
3. .... your teacher like honey ?  
a. Does                      b. Do                      c. Has                      d. Have
4. .... there a cinema in your town ?  
a. Is                      b. Are                      c. Were                      d. Did
5. .... do lions eat ? - Meat.  
a. Where                      b. What time                      c. What                      d. Who
6. **SB** .... is it ? - It's quarter past ten.  
a. Where                      b. What time                      c. When                      d. Which
7. .... animal is bigger, a hippo or a whale ?  
a. Why                      b. When                      c. Which                      d. How many
8. .... you like swimming ? - No, I don't.  
a. Are                      b. Does                      c. Do                      d. Have
9. .... legs does a beetle have ?  
a. How many                      b. How much                      c. How long                      d. How often
10. .... your mother live in a big city ?  
a. Do                      b. Does                      c. Is                      d. Are

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **WB** Has you got a blue pen ? ( ..... )
2. How colour do you like ? - Blue. ( ..... )
3. How many is the blue jacket ? - 150 L.E. ( ..... )
4. Why old are you ? - 12 years old. ( ..... )
5. When do you live ? - In Shoubra. ( ..... )
6. What is interested in gymnastics ? - Ayman. ( ..... )



## IV Speaking corner

### 1 Asking about the type of music someone likes :

١. السؤال عن نوع الموسيقى التي يحبها شخص ما :

#### Questions ?

- What type of music do you like ?  
ما نوع الموسيقى التي تحبها ؟
- When did you learn to play the piano ?  
متى تعلمت العزف على البيانو ؟

#### Answers ✓

- I like jazz, but I don't like opera.  
أحب موسيقى الجاز ولكن لا أحب موسيقى الأوبرا.
- When I was ten.  
عندما كنت في سن العاشرة.

### 2 Asking and answering questions about activities and abilities :

٢. السؤال عن الأنشطة والقدرات :

#### Questions ?

- Crusoe was alone on the island.  
كان كروزو وحيداً على الجزيرة.
- What could he do ? ؟ ماذا استطاع أن يفعل ؟
- What couldn't he do ?  
ماذا لم يستطع أن يفعل ؟

#### Answers ✓

- He could walk on the beach.  
استطاع ان يمشي على الشاطئ.
- He couldn't sleep in a bed.  
لم يستطع النوم على سرير.

## V Writing

### Stop here !

الجملة الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.  
«Robinson Crusoe»

1. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story.  
١. روبنسون كروزو قصة مغامرات.
2. Crusoe was a sailor.  
٢. كان كروزو بحاراً.
3. One day there was a really terrible storm and his ship sank.  
٣. في أحد الأيام كانت هناك عاصفة شديدة جداً وغرقت سفينته.
4. He was alone on the island.  
٤. كان وحده على الجزيرة.
5. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him.  
٥. كتب كروزو ما حدث له على الجزيرة في يومياته.
6. He found a cave on the island.  
٦. وجد كهف على تلك الجزيرة.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Hi! Ali. What type of music do you like ?

Ali : Hi! Ahmed. My (1) ..... music is pop.

Ahmed : (2) ..... you like another type of music ?

Ali : No, I (3) ..... I like pop but I don't like jazz.

Ahmed : Do you like listening (4) ..... songs ?

Ali : Of course. And you ?

Ahmed : I prefer playing the piano.

Ali : The piano ! (5) ..... taught you to play the piano ?

Ahmed : My dad !

Ali : That's fantastic !

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Jazz is a type of .....

- a. music      b. subject      c. material      d. metal

2. There are a lot of ..... on this beach. It is dangerous to swim here.

- a. jungles      b. trees      c. rocks      d. sand

3. I can't recognise **يتعرف على** Ahmed's ..... . He has lived in Europe for many years.

- a. taste      b. sound      c. smell      d. voice

4. The opposite of "float" is ".....".

- a. sink      b. think      c. hold      d. hurry

5. Good students always write ..... the most important points in the lesson.

- a. down      b. into      c. up      d. upon

6. **WB** Coconuts are large brown .....  
 a. glasses      b. pots      c. nuts      d. cells
7. **WB** I didn't like this story but, I thought the writer was .....  
 a. happy      b. clever      c. alone      d. terrible
8. .... there banks in this street ?  
 a. Was      b. Is      c. Are      d. Does
9. .... are their future jobs ? - They will be doctors.  
 a. Why      b. Who      c. What      d. When
10. .... spoke to his cousin yesterday ? - Sameh.  
 a. What      b. Who      c. When      d. Why

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** He learned play the piano when he was ten. ( ..... )
2. Did you eat pizza ? - Yes, I do. ( ..... )
3. **WB** Crusoe can't sleep into a bed. ( ..... )
4. Has your brother got a pencil case ? - Yes, he does. ( ..... )

### 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A trip to an island"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

great / fantastic (adj) رائع



Ok (adv) على ما يرام / جيد



terrible (adj) فظيع / سيئ



Siwa (n) واحة سيوة



hotel (n) فندق



concert (n) حفلة موسيقية



stadium (n) ستاد رياضي



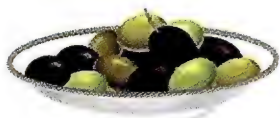
ticket (n) تذكرة



park (n) حديقة



olives (n) زيتون



theatre (n) مسرح



peppers (n) فلفل



## Key Vocabulary

feelings (n)	مشاعر	order (n)	ترتيب
hopes (n)	آمال	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن
thoughts (n)	أفكار	emotion (n)	عاطفة / انفعال

## Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 74

person (n)	شخص	writer (n)	كاتب
contrast (n)	تناقض	game (n)	لعبة
information (n)	معلومات	kind (n)	نوع
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	really (adv)	حقًا

## Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

writing tips (n)	نصائح / إرشادات للكتابة	baby brother (n)	أخ رضيع
full stop (.)	نقطة	maths homework (n)	واجب الرياضيات المنزلي
exclamation mark (!)	علامة التعجب		
interesting (adj)	رائع / شيق	respond (ed) (v)	يرد / يستجيب
surprising (adj)	مدهش	past tense (n)	زمن الماضي
windy (adj)	عاصف	try (ied) (v)	يحاول / يجرب
barbecue (n)	حفل شواء	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط - خطة
journey (n)	رحلة	doodles (n)	شذبة
tired (adj)	متعب	kitchen (n)	مطبخ
laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	shop (n)	محل

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
say يقول	said	said
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
lose يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost
show يبين / يوضح	showed	shown
understand يفهم	understood	understood

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
great / fantastic رائع / عظيم	terrible سيئ / فظيع
stop يتوقف	continue يستمر
loud عال الصوت	quiet هادئ
beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

**windy** When the wind blows, the weather is windy

عاصف

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

remember about يتذكر (شيء) عن	have a barbecue نقيم حفل شواء في الهواء الطلق
do maths homework يؤدي واجب مادة الرياضيات	take a selfie يلتقط صورته بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف المحمول
give a reason for يعطي سبباً لـ / يبرر	plan to يخطط لـ
look around يتجول	stay on the beach يبقى / يمكث على الشاطئ
go on holiday يذهب في أجازة	
stop working يتوقف عن العمل	



## II Listening and Reading

### Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 9

**Narrator** : one

**Woman** : Hi Lina. How was your weekend ?

**Lina** : Oh, it was terrible.

**Woman** : Oh dear, what happened ?

**Lina** : I watched a football match at the stadium<sup>(1)</sup>. It was terrible because my team<sup>(2)</sup> lost<sup>(3)</sup> 5 - 2. Then I took a selfie<sup>(4)</sup> but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.

**Woman** : Oh dear !

**Narrator** : two

[A man and a boy]

**Man** : Hi Hisham. How was your weekend ?

**Hisham** : It was great because I went to the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives<sup>(5)</sup> and pepper<sup>(6)</sup>. The pizza was really good although it was expensive.

**Narrator** : three

[A woman and a girl]

**Woman 2** : Hi Judy. How was your weekend ?

**Judy** : It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre<sup>(7)</sup> in the evening.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) ستاد رياضي (2) فريق (3) خسر (4) التقط صورة باستخدام الكاميرا الأمامية (5) زيتون (6) فلفل (7) مسرح

## Lesson 5 WB page 74

**Narrator : 1**

**Judy** : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because we played all my favourite games!

**Narrator : 2**

**Khaled** : I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although it was not her best book.

**Narrator : 3**

**Marwa** : My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres ! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

**Narrator : 4**

**Hany** : We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although I didn't understand every word!



## Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

### Dalia's diary Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> August

Today was a terrible day<sup>(1)</sup>! My baby brother woke me up<sup>(2)</sup> at 5 am ! I am so tired<sup>(3)</sup> now. I went to the kitchen<sup>(4)</sup> for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed<sup>(5)</sup> because it was only 6:30 am !

Then I tried<sup>(6)</sup> to do my maths homework<sup>(7)</sup> but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working<sup>(8)</sup>. Although we planned to have a barbecue<sup>(9)</sup> in the afternoon, it was very windy<sup>(10)</sup>. We could not have it ! I hope<sup>(11)</sup> tomorrow is a better day !



#### Check Vocabulary

يوم سيئ (1)	أيقظ (2)	مُتعب (3)	ذهب إلى المطبخ (4)	مغلق (5)	حاول (6)
يعمل واجب الرياضيات (7)	توقف عن العمل (8)	حفل شواء (9)	عاصف (10)	يتمنى (11)	



## General Notes on Reading and Listening

### 1 remember - remind

\* remember

يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)

ex.: - What do you remember about your weekend ?

\* remind (v)

يذكر (شخص آخر بشئ ما)

ex.: - My mom reminded me of my homework.

### 2 terrible - terrific

\* terrible = very bad

فظيع (سيئ)

ex.: - Toka had a terrible accident.

\* terrific = wonderful

فظيع (رائع)

ex.: - Mr Ayman did a terrific job.

### 3 so

\* so + صفة / ظرف = very

جدا

ex.: - I was so tired yesterday.

\*  $\frac{\text{سبب}}{\text{جملة}} \text{ so } + \frac{\text{(نتيجة)}}{\text{جملة}}$

لذلك (كلمة ربط)

ex.: - I was very tired, so I went to bed.

### 4 Try

\* try + (to + inf)

يحاول (بكل جهده)

ex.: - I tried to do my maths homework.

\* try + (inf. + ing) / (noun)

يجرب (لكي يرى ما سيحدث)

ex.: - Try studying in the early morning. It will be useful.

- Try fish for lunch. It is good for you.



## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I prefer watching matches on TV, but my brother prefers going to the ..... to watch them.  
a. tower                      b. clinic                      c. stadium                      d. zoo
- I enjoy having vegetables on my pizza, especially ..... and olives.  
a. peppers                      b. papers                      c. oranges                      d. bananas
- My favourite ..... lost 5 : 2 in yesterday's match.  
a. group                      b. team                      c. lesson                      d. subject
- I like watching Adel Imam's plays مسرحيات at the .....  
a. cinema                      b. zoo                      c. park                      d. theatre

## Exercise on Vocabulary

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What ..... of person was Robinson Crusoe ? - Clever.  
a. kind                      b. time                      c. age                      d. size
- How was the weekend ? - It was ..... great.  
a. a few                      b. a little                      c. really                      d. many
- SB** My little brother ..... me up at 5 a.m.  
a. drove                      b. gave                      c. played                      d. woke
- SB** I went to the shop but it was .....  
a. open                      b. closed                      c. white                      d. heavy
- SB** My laptop stopped ..... , so I lost all my work.  
a. living                      b. working                      c. dying                      d. trying
- We planned to ..... a barbecue in the afternoon.  
a. do                      b. have                      c. work                      d. open
- We couldn't go out yesterday because it was .....  
a. funny                      b. good                      c. windy                      d. nice

### III

## Speaking corner

### 1 Asking and responding to past events :

١. السؤال والرد على أحداث ماضية :

How was your weekend ?

كيف كانت عطلة نهاية  
الأسبوع الخاصة بك ؟

What was the  
(food) like ?

كيف كان الطعام ؟

It was great/fantastic !  
كانت رائعة !

It was OK.  
كانت على ما يرام.

It was terrible !  
كان سيئاً جداً !

It was (really / very) interesting.  
كانت (حقاً / جداً) ممتعة.

It was (really / very) good.  
كانت (حقاً / جداً) جيدة.

It was (really) bad.  
كان (حقاً) سيئاً.

### 2 Remember !

٢. تذكر !

#### 1. Because & Although

##### Because لأن

We use **because** to give a reason for something.

نستخدم (because) لإعطاء سبب أو مبرر  
لشيء ما.

ex.: - His ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

- It was great because I went to the bowling alley.

##### Although بالرغم من / ومع ذلك

We use **although** to express contrasted information.

نستخدم (although) للتعبير عن التناقض.

ex.: - Although I was very hungry, I didn't want to eat another dead fish !

- The pizza was really good although it was cheap.

## 2. Ordinary & strong adjectives : الصفات العادية والصفات القوية

### Ordinary adjectives

صفات ذو معنى عادى

good	جيد
old	قديم
small	صغير الحجم
tired	متعب
bad	سيئ

### Strong adjectives

صفات ذو معنى قوى

fantastic / wonderful	رائع
ancient	عتيق / قديم جداً
tiny	ضئيل الحجم
exhausted	منهك
terrible	فظيع / سيئ جداً

**لاحظ أن :** الصفات القوية لا يمكن أن تسبق بـ (very) فى حين أنها يمكن أن تسبق بـ (really).

- It was very terrible. (X)

- It was really terrible. (✓)

## IV

## Writing

### Writing tips

#### كتابة مدونة يومية Writing a diary

1. You can end a sentence with a full stop (.) or an exclamation mark (!) to show strong emotion.  
يمكنك أن تنهى الجملة بنقطة (.) أو بعلامة تعجب (!) لتبين أو توضح مدى قوة العاطفة.
2. Use an exclamation mark (!) after interesting or surprising information.  
استخدم علامة التعجب (!) بعد معلومات تدعو للدهشة أو الإثارة.
3. A capital letter follows both a full stop (.) and an exclamation mark (!) بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب، تبدأ الجملة بـ (حرف كبير).
4. Use the past tense (most of the time).  
استخدم زمن الماضى (معظم الوقت).
5. Use the 1<sup>st</sup> person (I or We).  
استخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا ونحن).
6. Write things in the order that they happened.  
اكتب الأشياء بترتيب حدوثها.
7. Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.  
تحدث عن مشاعرك، آمالك، أفكارك وآرائك.
8. Include pictures and doodles.  
ارفق صور و شخبطة.



## **Dalia's diary**

### **Dalia's opinion of the terrible day.**

**Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> August**

Today was a terrible day ! My baby brother woke me up at 5 a.m ! I am so tired now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed because it was only 6:30 am !

Then I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working. Although we planned to have a barbecue in the afternoon, it was very windy. We could not have it !

I hope tomorrow is a better day !

## **Stop here !**

**الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.**

### **«Describe your day»**

1. My day was a terrible day. ١. كان يومي يومًا سيئًا / فظيئًا.
2. I had a very bad headache. ٢. كنت أعاني من صداع شديد.
3. The weather was windy and I couldn't go to work. ٣. كان الطقس عاصفًا ولم أستطع الذهاب إلى العمل.
4. My phone stopped working. ٤. توقف هاتفي عن العمل.
5. There was no milk or bread in the house. ٥. لم يكن هناك لبن أو خبز في المنزل.
6. I hope tomorrow is a better day. ٦. أتمنى أن يكون غدًا يومًا أفضل.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5&6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Who drove you to the park ? .....  
a. My father      b. My brother      c. My uncle      d. My mother
2. When did you go to the park ? - On .....  
a. Monday      b. Sunday      c. Saturday      d. Friday
3. My father took ..... to go two kilometres !  
a. three hours      b. two hours      c. five hours      d. an hour
4. It was ..... because there were so many cars.  
a. great      b. fantastic      c. terrible      d. quiet

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Mona :** Do you like classical music ?

**Dina :** Yes, I do. It's (1) .....

**Mona :** When did you (2) ..... to a concert ?

**Dina :** I went to the concert last year.

**Mona :** Did you (3) ..... a ticket for the concert ?

**Dina :** Yes, of course.

**Mona :** (4) ..... went with you ?

**Dina :** My father and mother.

**Mona :** Did you enjoy it ?

**Dina :** Yes, I (5) .....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Crusoe was a ..... on a ship.  
a. rider      b. soldier      c. sailor      d. driver

2. As it was ....., we couldn't stay on the beach.  
a. funny      b. windy      c. holiday      d. nice
3. .... music is a type of music used a long time ago.  
a. Traditional      b. Recent      c. Modern      d. New
4. Mum loves ..... Her cakes are delicious.  
a. swimming      b. cooking      c. travelling      d. making
5. You have to get a ..... for the concert.  
a. jacket      b. racket      c. ticket      d. bucket
6. If you put a stone in water, it .....  
a. sinks      b. floats      c. dives      d. drives
7. His trip in the desert was really ..... He was very afraid.  
a. enjoyable      b. terrible      c. exciting      d. wonderful
8. **SB** The pizza was really good ..... it was expensive.  
a. although      b. because      c. so      d. as
9. I ..... to my uncle's farm last Friday.  
a. go      b. went      c. am going      d. will go
10. We stayed at a hotel because we ..... very tired.  
a. are      b. were      c. was      d. 'll be

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Tomorrow was very hot. ( ..... )
2. When is your last party ? ( ..... )
3. Could Crusoe sees the island ? ( ..... )
4. I last go to the concert in 2010. ( ..... )





# Review

# on Unit 7

SB page 11

WB page 76

## 1. Vocabulary

aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	musician	موسيقيار
sports centre	مركز رياضي	coconut	جوز الهند
funfair	الملاهي	sailor	بحار
planetarium	القبة السماوية	jungle	غابة كثيفة / أدغال
football stadium	ستاد كرة القدم	interview	مقابلة شخصية / يجري مقابلة شخصية
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	interviewer	المحاور
nervous	متوتر / عصبي	voice	صوت (بشرى)
diary	مفكرة	sound	صوت (شئ)
shopping centre	مركز تسوق	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية

## 2. Language

### Past time expressions :

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي :

last year - in the past - yesterday - this morning - in October -  
an hour ago - four years ago

ex.: - She helped her sister this morning.

ex.: - They built this house 3 years ago.

## 3. Speaking

### Asking and responding to questions about past events :

السؤال والإجابة عن الأحداث الماضية

ex.: - How was your weekend ?

- It was really (terrible / very good / very bad).

## 4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

### Model Paragraph 1

#### "Your last weekend"

Last week, I spent a really nice weekend. I went to my friend's house and we played in the park. It was a lot of fun. I went to the stadium with my father. I watched a football match but my team lost. I took lots of selfies. After the match, I went to a restaurant to have pizza with olives and peppers. Next weekend, I will go to the museum or the funfair.

### Model Paragraph 2

#### "Music"

Listening to music is my favourite hobby. There are many types of music. There are jazz music, rock music and pop music. I like pop music. I like playing the trumpet. My favourite musician is Marvin Allstar. I want to learn how to play the violin. My sister likes traditional music. I like the sounds of the trumpet and the flute. My father learned to play the piano. My mother likes classical music more than opera.

## 5. Writing Skill



### Study

\* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics	Helpful Expressions
الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) A diary	- What a fantastic (day/weekend/music) !
(2) A fantastic day	- I went to (مكان) on (يوم).
(3) My weekend	- I met (شخص).
(4) Types of music	- We played (لعبة رياضية) in (مكان).
	- (اسم شيء) / likes (فعل + ing) like (فاعل).
	- (نوع موسيقى) like / likes music best. (فاعل).
	- like / likes the sound of the (آلة موسيقية) (فاعل).
	- learned to play the (آلة موسيقية) when (رقم) was (فاعل).
	- I think (نوع موسيقى / لعبة رياضية) is great.



## Try

\* بعد دراسة التعبيرات السابقة تدرب على كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية :

Helpful words	Try to make a sentence
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- weekend</li> <li>- park</li> <li>- my friend</li> <li>- piano</li> <li>- jazz</li> <li>- sports centre</li> </ul>	<p>What a fantastic weekend !</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>



## Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A fantastic weekend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

كتابة الموضوعات الإنشائية

من الأسئلة الهامة في الورقة الامتحانية

تدرب في

Writing Skill في نهاية كل وحدة.

الموضوعات الإنشائية مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.

الموضوعات الإنشائية في ملحق المعاصر.







# Test on unit

# 7



تنويه

يمكنك حل  
الاختبار إلكترونيًا  
وتصويبه

## A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mum doesn't like ..... .  
a. watching sports                      b. playing chess  
c. eating pizza                              d. driving cars
- Dad likes ..... .  
a. English                      b. science                      c. history                      d. French
- Nadia is ..... years old.  
a. 15                      b. 50                      c. 5                      d. 51
- Dad is always ..... .  
a. sad                      b. happy                      c. angry                      d. busy

## B. Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Toka : Hi Roqia ! How was your weekend ?

Roqia : Hi Toka ! It was (1) ..... !

Toka : Terrible ! Why ?

Roqia : My baby brother woke me (2) ..... at 4 a.m.

Toka : Oh ! (3) ..... did you do after that ?

Roqia : I went to the kitchen for (4) ..... , but there was no milk or bread.

Toka : Did you get milk and bread ?

Roqia : No, I found that the shop was (5) ..... .

Toka : I'm so sorry for you.

Roqia : Thanks.

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day there was a really terrible storm and his ship sank. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island.

**18<sup>th</sup> December**

He arrived on the island four days ago. Today he walked along the beach again but he saw nobody and he thought he was alone. This afternoon, he found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice.

**19<sup>th</sup> December**

He found a **coconut** on the beach today, it was delicious. It rained last night and he was cold and wet, so he went to look for a cave. He wanted a warm place to sleep. He walked through a jungle and there were some rocks, but no caves.

**20<sup>th</sup> December**

He found a cave !

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Where did Crusoe arrive on 14<sup>th</sup> December ?

.....

2. What kind of story is Robinson Crusoe ?

.....

3. Why do you think Crusoe looked for a cave ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. "**Coconut**" is a kind of .....

- a. liquid      b. food      c. subject      d. sport

5. The underlined pronoun "**there**" refers to the .....

- a. city      b. country      c. island      d. town

6. There were some ..... in the jungle.

- a. books      b. rocks      c. vegetables      d. woods

**D. Vocabulary & Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. In the Science ....., I saw an exhibition about reptiles الزواحف.

- a. Factory      b. Museum      c. Company      d. Library

2. Never eat meat from a ..... animal.

- a. dead      b. dying      c. died      d. death

3. Wise people الحُكَمَاء make good ..... .  
a. shopping      b. decisions      c. instructions      d. equipment
4. I like ..... on the big wheel.  
a. driving      b. reading      c. riding      d. climbing
5. We had a / an ..... weekend. I broke my left arm.  
a. terrible      b. fantastic      c. interesting      d. wonderful
6. I sat next to a boy ..... Samir this morning.  
a. given      b. driven      c. ridden      d. called
7. When you put a plastic ball in water, it ..... .  
a. floats      b. thinks      c. sinks      d. thanks
8. I ..... a football match two days ago.  
a. watching      b. watched      c. watch      d. am watching
9. What ..... you do last Sunday ? - I studied geography.  
a. did      b. do      c. are      d. were
10. It was a terrible day ..... my team lost 5 - 2.  
a. although      b. because      c. so      d. however

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. What day was today ? ( ..... )
2. She listens to music 2 hours ago. ( ..... )
3. I like jazz and I don't like opera. ( ..... )
4. Have you got a new jacket ? - No, I don't. ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"A terrible weekend you had"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

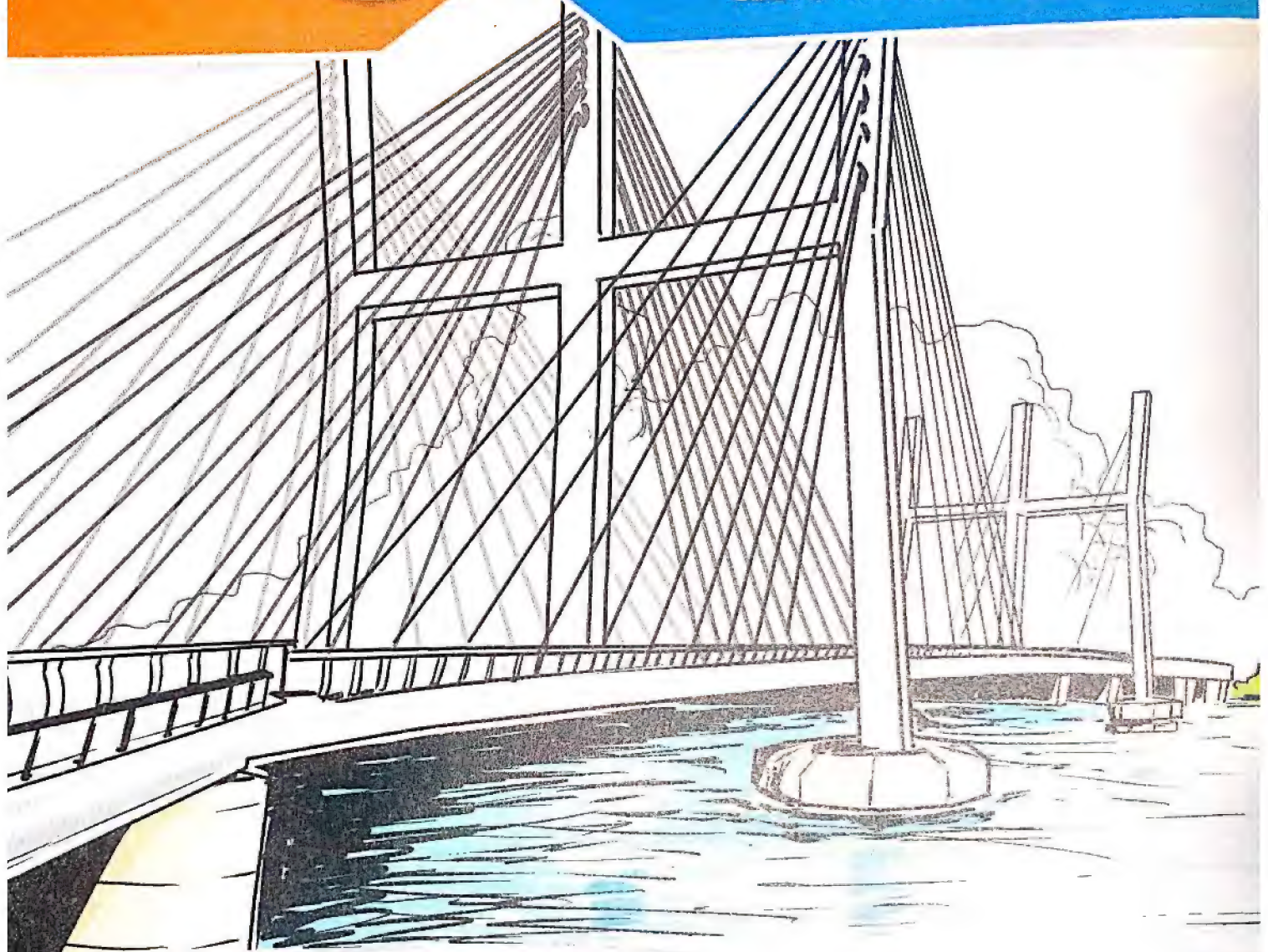
.....



# Unit 8

SB pages 12:21 WB pages 77:83

## The amazing world around us



### Objectives

#### • Reading :

A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum

#### • Writing :

A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion

#### • Listening :

Facts and figures; a quiz

#### • Speaking :

Talking about measurements; making comparisons

#### • Language :

Comparative and superlative adjectives

#### • Issues :

Loyalty and belonging

#### • Life Skills :

Respecting different opinions

- يمكنك استخدام فكرة Time saving  
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب  
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات





## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

bridge (n)

كوبرى



city (n)

مدينة



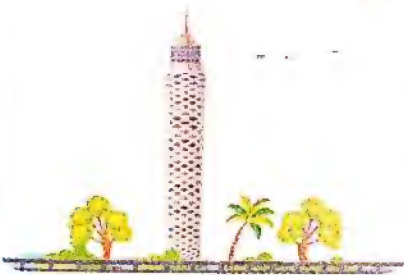
pyramid (n)

هرم



tower (n)

برج



tunnel

نفق



desert road (n) طريق صحراوي



country (n)

دولة



forest (n)

غابة

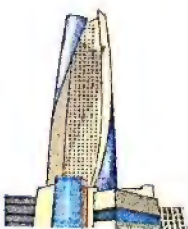


river (n)

نهر



The Al Hamra Tower (n)  
برج الحمراء

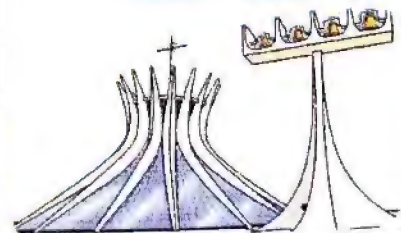


Bangkok (n) مدينة بانكوك



Brasillia (n)

مدينة برازيليا (البرازيل)





## Key Vocabulary

crowded (adj)	مزدحم	population (n)	تعداد السكان
the countryside (n)	الريف	measurement (n)	وحدة قياس / قياس
visitors (n)	زوار	building (n)	مبنى

## أماكن مشهورة

## Famous places

Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	Thailand (n)	دولة تايلاند
Tahya Masr Bridge	كوبرى تحيا مصر	The library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية
Cairo - Alexandria desert road	طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى	The Gotthard tunnel (n)	نفق جوتهارد (فى سويسرا)
Lake Baikal	بحيرة بيكل (روسيا)	The Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاي
Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower)	أبراج البيت (برج الساعة) (المملكة العربية السعودية)	Switzerland (n)	دولة سويسرا
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	Mount Everest	جبل إفرست
the pyramid of El Castillo	هرم كاستيلو	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمانجارو
The Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر	Qasr El-Nil Bridge	كوبرى قصر النيل
The 6 <sup>th</sup> October Bridge	كوبرى ٦ أكتوبر	The Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل
		The Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة

## Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

wide (adj)	واسع	hundred (n)	مائة
ground (n)	أرض	thousand (n)	ألف
Nile Banks (n)	ضفاف النيل	million	مليون
link (ed) (v)	يربط	facts (n)	حقائق
exact (adj)	دقيق - محدد	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
research (ed) (v), (n)	يجرى بحثاً / بحث	daily (adj)	يومي

## Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

empty (adj)	فارغ	capital (n)	عاصمة
further (adj)	أبعد	correctly (adv)	بطريقة صحيحة
centre (n)	وسط	rules (n)	قوانين / قواعد
describe (d) (v)	يصف	tourists (n)	سياح
quiz (n)	اختبار قصير / مسابقة	traffic (n)	المرور



market (n)  
compare (d) (v)

سوق تجارى  
يقارن

across (adv)

عبر / خلال

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
build يبنى	built	built
hit يضرب	hit	hit

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
wide واسع	narrow ضيق
crowded مزدحم	empty فارغ
modern حديث	old / ancient قديم
noisy مزعج	quiet هادئ
better أفضل	worse أسوأ
high مرتفع	low منخفض

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

bridge	something used for people and cars to cross a road or river	كوبرى
city	a large town	مدينة كبيرة
crowded	where there are many people	مزدحم
empty	without any people or things in it	فارغ
low	not far from the top to the bottom of something	منخفض
modern	relating to the present, not old	حديث
narrow	not far from one side of something to the other, not wide	ضيق
noisy	making a lot of noise, not quiet	مزعج
pyramid	a large building that is square at the bottom with four triangular sides forming a point at the top	هرم
quiet	without making much noise, not noisy	هادئ
tower	a tall, narrow building	برج
wide	far from one side of something to the other, not narrow	واسع
further	at a bigger distance, the comparative of far	ابعد

<b>tall</b>	more than usual height; not short	طويل
<b>tunnel</b>	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain	نفق

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

under the ground	تحت الأرض	crowded with	مزدحم بـ
make questions	يكون أسئلة	make it noisier or quieter	يجعلها أكثر إزعاجاً أو أكثر هدوءاً
answer to	إجابة لـ	Which one is more modern ?	أيهما أكثر عصرية (حدثاً) ؟
further from	أبعد من		
the centre of Cairo	وسط القاهرة		
(be) better	يكون أفضل حالاً	easy for	سهل لـ
(be) worse	يكون أسوأ حالاً	go	يمر من فوق النهر
better for	أفضل لـ		يمر من تحت البحر
more than	أكثر من		يسير في طريق
give an exact number	يعطي رقم دقيق	at the same time	في نفس الوقت

## II

## Reading and Listening

### Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

1

**Voice a :** The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.

**Voice b :** The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 540 metres long.

**Voice c :** More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.

**Voice d :** The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.

**Voice e :** The Gotthard tunnel in Switzerland is 2,300 metres under the ground.



## • Lesson 1 SB page 13

2

Narrator : 1

A : How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road ?

B : It's 220 kilometres long.

Narrator : 2

A : How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ?

B : It's 1,642 metres deep.

Narrator : 3

A : How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia ?

B : It's 601 metres high.

Narrator : 4

A : How old is the Luxor Temple ?

B : It's just under 3,500 years old.

Narrator : 5

A : How many people live in Cairo ?

B : More than 20 million people.

## • Lesson 1 WB page 77

3

Voice 1 : forty -eight million.

Voice 2 : two hundred and eight-seven thousand.

Voice 3 : two hundred and fifty two.

Voice 4 : six million, four hundred and twelve thousand.







# Listening

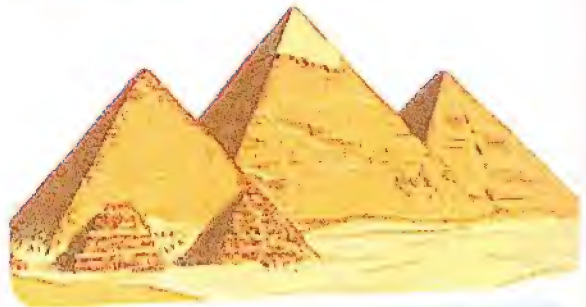
Lesson 2 page 15

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid<sup>(1)</sup> of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid<sup>(2)</sup>, which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further<sup>(3)</sup> away from the centre<sup>(4)</sup> of Cairo, so it's less crowded<sup>(5)</sup> with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.

Now let's compare<sup>(6)</sup> two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower<sup>(7)</sup> in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.

Finally, we're going to compare two capital<sup>(8)</sup> cities. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population<sup>(9)</sup> of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?



## Check Vocabulary

(1) الهرم الأكبر	(2) الهرم الأحمر	(3) أبعد	(4) وسط	(5) أقل ازدحاماً
(6) يقارن	(7) برج شنتهاى	(8) عاصمة	(9) تعداد السكان	



# General Notes on Reading & Listening

• لاحظ الجدول التالي :

	الصفة			الاسم	
How	deep	كم عمق	What	depth	ما عمق
	long	كم طول		length	ما طول
	old	كم عمر		age	ما عمر
	high / tall ... ?	كم طول		height ..... ?	ما ارتفاع
	much	كم ثمن / كمية		price / quantity	ما سعر / كمية
	many	كم عدد		number	ما العدد
	wide	كم عرض		width	ما العرض

► **How + صفة ..... ? = What + اسم ..... ?** كم ..... ؟

**ex.:** - **SB** How wide is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

= What width is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

**ex.:** - **SB** How old are the Pyramids ?

= What age are the Pyramids ?

► لاحظ : استخدام صفة غير مضاف إليها أى إضافات بعد التعبيرات التى تدل على المقاييس.

**ex.:** - **SB** It's 146 metres high.

- **SB** It's about 25,000 metres long.

## ► amazing - amazed

\* **amazing (adj)**

مُدهش (تصف الأشياء والمواقف)

**ex.:** - I've read an amazing story.

\* **amazed (adj)**

مُدهش (الأشخاص)

**ex.:** - I got amazed when I saw Mohamed Salah.

► ملحوظة : عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بالضبط تستخدم بعض التعبيرات التالية مثل :

حوالى ... about / أقل من just under / أكثر من more than

**ex.:** - Mr Ayman may be more than 40 years old.

- Mr Ashraf has got about 50 students in his class.



ملحوظة : بعض الاختصارات لوحدات القياس :

- metre = m

- kilogram = kg

- centimetre = cm

- kilometre = km

أبعد من ...

### ► further (from)

**ex.:** - My house is further from the school than yours.

(far - further - furthest)

• لاحظ :

**ex.:** - Your house is far, but mine is further.

► **which + اسم + is** طرف المقارنة الأولى (1) صفة مقارنة **or** طرف المقارنة الثانية (2) ؟  
للسؤال عن المقارنة بين شيئين تستخدم التركيب السابق.

**ex.:** - Which animal is faster, a horse or a donkey ?

- Which thing is heavier, a book or a pencil ?

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ..... of Bangkok in Thailand is about 10 million people.  
a. pollution      b. population      c. weather      d. transport
2. Egypt is a big ..... in the North of Africa.  
a. country      b. city      c. island      d. ocean
3. Cairo-Alexandria desert ..... is 220 km long.  
a. river      b. pavement      c. road      d. street
4. Metre, kilometre and centimetre are length .....  
a. bridges      b. towers      c. measurements      d. tunnels
5. The underground goes through a long .....  
a. cave      b. forest      c. tunnel      d. path
6. Qasr El-Nil is one of the oldest ..... in Egypt.  
a. bridges      b. towers      c. pyramids      d. tunnels
7. Bangkok is a very ..... city. There are too many people there.  
a. empty      b. crowded      c. quiet      d. calm



## Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait was built in 2011, so it's a/an ..... building.  
a. old                      b. ancient                      c. modern                      d. crowded
2. The opposite of "wide" is " .....".  
a. exact                      b. narrow                      c. long                      d. small
3. **58** The Great Pyramid is 146 metres .....  
a. wide                      b. high                      c. heavy                      d. long
4. Can you ..... who is behind the door ? - I think she is Miss Bassant.  
a. miss                      b. press                      c. guess                      d. dress
5. Bangkok is the ..... of Thailand.  
a. island                      b. river                      c. country                      d. capital
6. Cairo ..... is one of the highest buildings in Egypt.  
a. Tower                      b. Pyramid                      c. Island                      d. Palace
7. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of ..... today.  
a. engineers                      b. officers                      c. visitors                      d. thieves
8. **73** The market is always very ..... at this time.  
a. wide                      b. busy                      c. hot                      d. high
9. **78** We need to buy some more water. This bottle is .....  
a. empty                      b. crowded                      c. noisy                      d. small

## Language

### المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة Comparative adjectives

#### 1 What's an adjective ? ما هي الصفة ؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (verb to be)

- ex. - He is a **tall** man.  
- This mobile is **expensive**.

## 2 Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة

1

### Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

هي الصفات التي تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

**fast / big / sad / happy ... etc.**

① تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

**adj + er + than** صفة

**fast → faster / old → older**

ونضيف ( **than** ) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

② يُضاف ( **r** ) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ ( **e** ) :

**large → larger / close → closer**

③ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف ( **er** ) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

**- big → bigger - thin → thinner**

**- hot → hotter - fit → fitter**

④ للصفات المنتهية بحرف ( **y** ) تتحول ( **y** ) إلى ( **ier** ) :

**- easy → easier**

**- happy → happier**

**- lazy → lazier**

**- healthy → healthier**

ex. - An elephant is **bigger than** a camel.

- The city is **noisier than** the country.

2

### Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

هي الصفات التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

**interesting / fantastic / beautiful / dangerous ... etc.**

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي :

**more / less + adj. + than** أكثر / أقل

**- beautiful**

**- more/less beautiful than**

أكثر / أقل جمالاً من

ex. - The dolphin is **more enormous than** the turtle.

- Maths is **more difficult than** English.



هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	الصفة	Comparative	الصفة عند المقارنة بين اثنين
bad	سيئ	worse	أسوأ
far	بعيد	farther	أبعد
		further	أبعد
good	جيد	better	أفضل
late	متأخر	later	أكثر تأخرًا
		latter	الآخر / الثاني
little	قليل الكمية	less	أقل
many	كثير العدد		
much	كثير الكمية	more	أكثر

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mount Everest is ..... than Mount Kilimanjaro.  
a. high      b. highest      c. the highest      d. higher
- This book is ..... than yours.  
a. more difficult      b. most difficult      c. as difficult      d. difficult
- Which bridge is ....., the 6<sup>th</sup> October Bridge or the Qasr El Nil Bridge ?  
a. long      b. longest      c. longer      d. the longest
- Suzan is ..... than her cousin, Mona.  
a. more beautiful      b. the beautiful      c. most beautiful      d. as beautiful
- Today the weather is ..... yesterday.  
a. colder than      b. as cold than      c. coldest      d. as colder as
- She is ..... her sister.  
a. pretty      b. as prettier as      c. prettier than      d. prettiest
- My uncle is ..... than my father.  
a. rich      b. richer      c. as rich      d. not rich
- The museum is usually ..... on Saturday than on Sunday.  
a. crowded      b. most crowded  
c. more crowded      d. the most crowded



9. The post office is ..... to my house than the park.  
 a. near                      b. nearest                      c. as near                      d. nearer
10. Yesterday was warm, but today is .....  
 a. warmer than                      b. warmer                      c. warmest                      d. the warmest

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. 58 The Nile River is longest than the Amazon. (.....)
2. 59 The Pyramids of Giza are easy for tourists to visit than the Red Pyramid. (.....)
3. 60 Adel is tall, but Rami is tallest. (.....)
4. This car is very nice but that one is nicest. (.....)

## IV Speaking Corner

### Talking about measurements.

الحديث عن القياسات.

### Questions ?

- How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road ?  
 كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الاسكندرية الصحراوي ؟
- How old is Luxor Temple ?  
 كم عمر معبد الأقصر ؟
- How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ?  
 كم يبلغ عمق بحيرة بيكال فى روسيا ؟
- How high is Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower) in Saudi Arabia ?  
 كم يبلغ ارتفاع أبراج البيت (برج ساعة) فى المملكة العربية السعودية ؟
- How many people live in Cairo ?  
 كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشون بالقاهرة ؟

### Answers ✓

- It's about 220 kilometres long.  
 يبلغ طوله حوالى ٢٢٠ كيلومتر.
- It's just under 3500 years old.  
 أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عامًا.
- It's 1,642 m deep under the water.  
 يبلغ عمقها ١,٦٤٢ متر تحت الماء.
- It's about 601 metres long.  
 يبلغ ارتفاعه ما يقرب من ٦٠١ متر.
- More than 20 million people live in Cairo.  
 أكثر من ٢٠ مليون إنسان يعيش بالقاهرة.

## (Famous places) Monuments معالم أثرية

• Which Pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid ?

في اعتقادك أيهم أطول الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أم الهرم الأحمر ؟

- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.

أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أطول.

◀ لاحظ أننا نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بالضبط.

حوالي about ... أقل من just under ... أكثر من more than ...



### Writing

#### Stop here !

الجملة الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«The amazing world around us»

1. Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimenjaro.

١. جبل إيفرست أعلى من جبل كيليمينجارو.

2. The Nile river is longer than the Amazon.

٢. نهر النيل أطول من الأمازون.

3. Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.

٣. القاهرة أكثر ازدحاماً من أسوان.

4. Luxor Temple is just under 3500 years old.

٤. يبلغ عمر معبد الأقصر أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عاماً.

5. Bangkok city is older than Brasilia, the capital of Brazil.

٥. مدينة بنكوك أقدم من مدينة برازيليا عاصمة البرازيل.

احرص على إقتناء



اسم زعمي الفوق

# الكتاب

في اللغة الإنجليزية  
للفصل الأول الإعدادي

المراجعة النهائية  
ونماذج الامتحانات



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ali : Yes, of (1) .....

Omar : How (2) ..... is the Great Pyramid ?

Ali : It's 146 metres high.

Omar : How many people live in Tokyo in Japan ?

Ali : (3) ..... 37,500,000 people.

Omar : (4) ..... length is Lake Baikal in Russia ?

Ali : It's 220 kilometres long.

Omar : How old is the Luxor Temple ?

Ali : It's just under 3,500 years (5) .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** The Great Pyramid of Giza is ..... than the Red Pyramid.  
a. tall                      b. taller                      c. tallest                      d. the tallest
2. **SB** My friend lives ..... to the school than me.  
a. nearer                      b. near                      c. nearest                      d. the nearest
3. The traffic is ..... in a city than in the countryside.  
a. worse                      b. bad                      c. worst                      d. the worst
4. How ..... is this hole ? – It's 20 metres.  
a. many                      b. deep                      c. long                      d. much
5. The ..... in Cairo is very busy.  
a. traffic                      b. food                      c. drink                      d. pollution
6. The policeman asked the woman to ..... the thief.  
a. give                      b. deliver                      c. prove                      d. describe



7. How ..... people live in Cairo ? - More than 20 million people.  
 a. long                      b. many                      c. much                      d. deep
8. There are many ..... visiting the museum today.  
 a. builders                      b. engineers                      c. tourists                      d. animals
9. The opposite of "better" is ".....".  
 a. worse                      b. wide                      c. windy                      d. white
10. Which is ..... the Nile or the Amazon ? - The Nile.  
 a. taller                      b. older                      c. longer                      d. higher

**3 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. WB A train is fast than a bus. ( ..... )
2. He is taller then his brother. ( ..... )
3. Which building is high, the Cairo Tower or the Great Pyramid ?  
 ( ..... )
4. She is beautiful than her cousin. ( ..... )

**4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

مسابقات في نهاية الكتاب

**"The amazing world around us"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

suspension bridge (n)  
كوبرى معلق



sunset (n) غروب الشمس



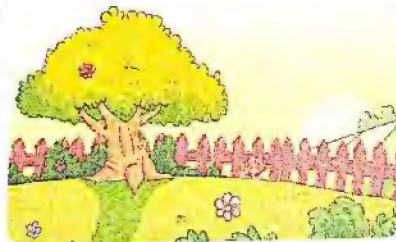
ice skating (n)  
ترحلق على الجليد



skiing (n) الترحلق على الجليد



view (n) منظر طبيعى / رؤية



afraid (adj) خائف



market (n) سوق



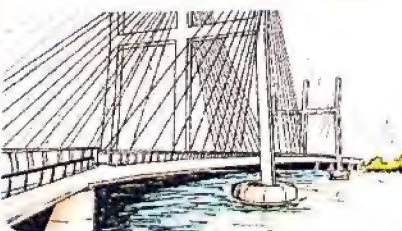
sports (n) ألعاب رياضية



mountain climbing (n)  
رياضة تسلق الجبال



The Tahya Masr Bridge (n)  
كوبرى تحيا مصر



tennis (n) لعبة التنس



insect (n) حشرة





## Key Vocabulary

achievements (n)	إنجازات	opinion (n)	رأى
proud (adj)	فخور		

## Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

finally (adv)	أخيراً	Nile's Warraq Island	جزيرة الوراق في النيل
probably (adv)	من المحتمل	social studies (n)	الدراسات الاجتماعية
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي	popular (adj)	مشهور
river (n)	نهر	fast (adj)	سريع
glass floor (n)	أرضية زجاجية		

## Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

Which .. ?	أي ؟ (الاختيار بين شيئين)	travels (n)	سفرات - رحلات
school subject (n)	مادة دراسية	right now (adv)	حالياً
famous building (n)	مبنى مشهور	politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة
holiday places (n)	أماكن لقضاء الأجازة	price (n)	سعر / ثمن
TV show (n)	عرض تليفزيوني	Dahab (n)	مدينة دهب السياحية (في جنوب سيناء)
way (n)	أسلوب / طريقة		
funny (adj)	ممتع / مضحك		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
mean يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح
cheap رخيص (التمن)	expensive غالى (التمن)
dangerous خطير	safe آمن
agree يوافق	disagree لا يوافق / يرفض
polite مؤدب / مهذب	impolite غير مؤدب / غير مهذب
healthy صحى	unhealthy غير صحى



new	جديد	old	قديم
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

achievement	a result to be proud of	إنجاز
dangerous	able to cause harm; not safe	خطير
safe	not in a dangerous situation or position	آمن
sunset	the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day	غروب الشمس
suspension bridge	a long bridge that has thick metal wires to hold it up	كوبرى معلق
ugly	not nice to look at; not beautiful	قبيح

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the best time to	أفضل وقت لـ	It's important to be polite	من المهم أن تكون مهذب
walk across	يمشي عبر	polite ways of disagreeing	أساليب مهذبة للاعتراض أو الرفض
be proud of	يكون فخور بـ	feel the same as you	أشعر مثلك تمامًا عن ذلك
view of the city	منظر / رؤية للمدينة	about that	أنت مخطئ
in my opinion ....	في رأيي ....	You are wrong !	I don't have the same opinion.
show on TV	عرض في التلفزيون		ليس لدى نفس الرأي.
What's your opinion of .. ?	ما رأيك في .. ؟	No way !	مستحيل !
Give your opinion.	اعطى رأيك.	I'm not sure about that	أنا غير متأكد من ذلك
disagree with someone	لا يتفق مع شخص	work in pairs	أعمل في ثنائيات
disagreeing politely	الاعتراض بطريقة مهذبة	in (رقم) minutes / hours / weeks.. etc	في خلال (عدد) دقائق / ساعات / أسابيع.. الخ
live on the island	يعيش على الجزيرة	It's a good idea !	إنها فكرة جيدة !
think of / about	يفكر في	the same size as	نفس الحجم مثل
I'm afraid that .....	أخشى أن / آسف على		
I don't agree	لا أوافق		
look like	يشبه		



## II Reading and Listening



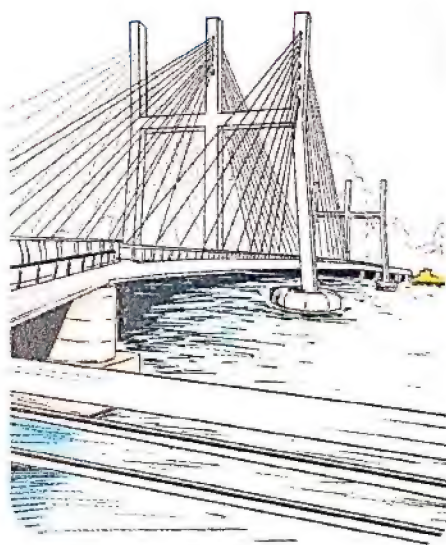
### Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

#### The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's **widest**<sup>(1)</sup> **suspension bridge**<sup>(2)</sup> opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge **crosses**<sup>(3)</sup> the Nile's Warraq **island**<sup>(4)</sup>. More than 100,000 people live on the island.



Many people enjoy **walking across**<sup>(5)</sup> the bridge. It has **a glass floor**<sup>(6)</sup>, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at **sunset**<sup>(7)</sup> for a beautiful **view**<sup>(8)</sup> of the city.

#### Check Vocabulary

- |                    |                |          |           |               |                  |                |                |
|--------------------|----------------|----------|-----------|---------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| (1) الأكثر اتساعاً | (2) كوبرى معلق | (3) يعبر | (4) جزيرة | (5) تمشية عبر | (6) أرضية زجاجية | (7) غروب الشمس | (8) منظر طبيعي |
|--------------------|----------------|----------|-----------|---------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|



### Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

1

**Voice:** In front of us, you can see the world's widest suspension bridge! It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 metres long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finally finished it 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.

## Lesson 4 SB page 18

2

**Girl 1 :** Which **subject**<sup>(1)</sup> do you think is more difficult, English or science ?

**Girl 2 :** In my **opinion**<sup>(2)</sup>, science is the most **difficult**<sup>(3)</sup> of all.

**Boy 1 :** I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you ?

**Boy 2 :** I agree. It's also the least **crowded**<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Girl 3 :** What's your opinion of **ice skating**<sup>(5)</sup> ? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing ?

**Girl 4 :** I'm afraid I don't agree.

**Boy 3 :** What do you think about the new **TV show**<sup>(6)</sup> ?

**Boy 4 :** I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.



### Check Vocabulary

(1) مادة دراسية (2) رأى (3) صعب (4) مزدحم (5) الترحاق على الجليد (6) عرض تلفزيوني



## General

## Notes on Reading and Listening

### ► enjoy + (inf. + ing) / noun.

يستمتع

**ex.:** - People enjoy walking across the bridge.  
- I enjoyed my holiday in Alexandria.

### ► cross – across

\* cross (v)

يعبر / يمر عبر

**ex.:** - The bridge **crosses** the Nile's Warraq Island.

\* across (adv)

عبر

**ex.:** - It's the best time to walk **across** the bridge.

### ► It takes / took + (وقت) + to + inf.

يستغرق (وقت)

**ex.:** - It took five years to build the bridge.  
- It takes me half an hour to go home from school.



### ► proud of - proud to

فخور بـ

\* proud of + (inf. + ing) or (noun)

ex.: - He is proud of his uncle.

- They are proud of being Egyptian teachers.

\* proud to + inf.

ex.: - He is proud to be Egyptian.

### ► busy = crowded

مزدحم

- busy day = a day full of work ... etc.

ex.: - I had a busy day yesterday.

- busy room = a room full of people ... etc.

ex.: - The room is very busy. I can't breathe. يتنفس

### ► afraid

\* I'm afraid .. = I'm sorry ....

أنا آسف / أخشى أن

ex.: - A : Can you lend me your bike, please ?

B : I'm afraid, I can't. I need it.

\* afraid of = frightened of

خائف من

ex.: - Rahma is afraid of dogs.

### ► way

\* way

طريق

ex.: - On my way to school, I met Mr Ali .

\* way

طريقة - أسلوب

ex.: - I don't like his way of thinking.

\* No way


مستحيل (تعبير بالرفض)

ex.: - A : Can you ride a bike ?


B : What ? No way !

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1.  Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest ..... bridge.

a. information      b. suspension      c. evaporation      d. condensation

2. I enjoy the view of the Nile at the end of the day at .....  
 a. sunrise                      b. sunset                      c. suncream                      d. sunshine
3. There is a beautiful ..... of the city from Cairo Tower.  
 a. review                      b. revision                      c. view                      d. preview
4.  Mountain ..... is the most dangerous sport at all.  
 a. delivery                      b. climbing                      c. weighing                      d. skating
5. It's important to be proud of your country's .....  
 a. sunrises                      b. suspensions                      c. achievements                      d. sunsets

## **E** xercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of "beautiful" is ".....".  
 a. important                      b. dangerous                      c. popular                      d. ugly
2. Most modern cars are ..... They are not cheap.  
 a. narrow                      b. expensive                      c. empty                      d. ugly
3. Tahya Masr Bridge is 67,36 metres .....  
 a. wide                      b. high                      c. old                      d. heavy
4. Many people enjoy walking ..... the bridge in the evening.  
 a. cross                      b. across                      c. between                      d. next
5.  What do you ..... about the new TV show ?  
 a. thank                      b. sing                      c. sink                      d. think
6. I'm proud ..... my father. He does his best to make us happy.  
 a. as                      b. from                      c. to                      d. of
7. The workers and engineers finished the project ..... 32 months.  
 a. of                      b. in                      c. at                      d. from
8. I disagree ..... you. English is the most important subject.  
 a. of                      b. at                      c. to                      d. with
9.  What is your ..... of doing sport every week ?  
 a. agree                      b. best                      c. opinion                      d. think





## Language

### Superlative adjectives (المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين) (صفة التفضيل)

1

#### Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة



• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :  
يُضاف ( **the... + est** ) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- fast → the fastest
- old → the oldest

• يُضاف ( **the ... + st** ) إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ ( **e** ) :

- large → the largest
- close → the closest

• يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف ( **the... + est** ) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the biggest
- thin → the thinnest
- hot → the hottest
- fit → the fittest

• الصفات المنتهية بحرف ( **y** ) تتحول ( **y** ) إلى ( **the... + iest** ) :

- easy → the easiest
- happy → the happiest
- lazy → the laziest
- healthy → the healthiest

- ex. - This bridge is the longest one.  
- Heba is the oldest student in her class.

2

#### Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة



• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

- the most الأكثر / the least الأقل +  
صفة. adj.

- the most/the least beautiful

الأكثر / الأقل جمالاً

- the most/the least dangerous

الأكثر / الأقل خطورة

- ex. - The whale is the most enormous animal.  
- I think maths is the most difficult subject.  
- This T-shirt is the least expensive one in the shop.

## Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل غير المنتظمة

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحتفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

1 Adj.	2 Comparative	3 Superlative
bad سيئ	worse أسوأ	the worst الأسوأ
far بعيد	farther أبعد	the farthest الأبعد
	further أبعد	the furthest الأبعد
good جيد	better أفضل	the best الأفضل
late متأخر	later أكثر تأخرًا	the latest الأكثر تأخرًا
	latter الآخر / الثاني	the last الأخير
little قليل (الكمية)	less أقل	the least الأقل
many كثير (العدد)	more أكثر	the most الأكثر
much كثير (الكمية)		

### A text with the superlative form (WB page 79)

You probably know that whales are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest? A whale<sup>(1)</sup> can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest animal in the world is a bird? It can fly to more than 300 km/h. Insects<sup>(2)</sup> are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal. Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew<sup>(3)</sup>. It looks like<sup>(4)</sup> a mouse and is the same size<sup>(5)</sup> as a bee<sup>(6)</sup>!

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) حوت (2) حشرات (3) ذبابة الاتروسكان (حيوان يشبه الفأر) (4) يشبه (5) نفس الحجم (6) نحلة

### ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية

(first/second/third/fourth ... etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.



لا تستخدم ( **the** ) قبل التفضيل عندما يسبقها ( **'s** ) الملكية أو صفة ملكية :

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ..... 's

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's **best** novelist.

- Is Ahmed **your youngest** brother ?

لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر ( **in - of** ) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(i) تستخدم ( **in** ) غالبًا قبل (المكان/الفريق) :

- He is **the best** player **in** the team.

- Everest is **the highest** mountain **in** the world.

(ب) تستخدم ( **of** ) غالبًا قبل (الأشخاص) :

- Sama is **the cleverest** **of** her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام ( **of** ) قبل السنوات :

- The death of my uncle is **the worst** event **of** 2016.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The world's ..... suspension bridge opened in Cairo.  
a. widest                      b. wide                      c. wider                      d. the widest
- Some people think that maths is ..... subject of all.  
a. difficult                      b. more difficult  
c. most difficult                      d. the most difficult
- On Saturdays, the market is ..... than on Fridays.  
a. quieter                      b. quiet                      c. quietest                      d. the quietest
- All these houses are nice but ours is .....  
a. nicer than                      b. nicest                      c. the nicest                      d. the nicer
- That pen is ..... of all.  
a. the better                      b. the best                      c. more good                      d. most good
- This is ..... film I've ever seen.  
a. boring                      b. as boring                      c. more boring                      d. the most boring
- Whales are ..... animals in the world.  
a. big                      b. bigger                      c. the biggest                      d. biggest
- What is the ..... town in your country ?  
a. largest                      b. larger                      c. more large                      d. the most large

9. A chair is ..... comfortable than a sofa.  
a. least                      b. little                      c. the least                      d. less
10. Which do you think is ..... city in the world ?  
a. exciting                      b. more exciting  
c. most exciting                      d. the most exciting
11. Climbing mountains is the ..... dangerous sport in the world.  
a. little                      b. less                      c. most                      d. more

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tokyo is the busier city in the world. ( ..... )
2. One of the more beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance. ( ..... )
3. What is the better place to play tennis near here ? ( ..... )
4. The blue car is most expensive than the red car. ( ..... )

## IV

## Speaking corner

### ① Talking about comparatives & superlatives :

الحديث عن المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة والتفضيل (المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين) :

### Stimulus ?

- Which Pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid ?  
أي هرم أطول، الهرم الأكبر أم الهرم الأحمر ؟
- Compare Bangkok, the capital of Thailand with Brasilia, the capital of Brazil. Which city is older ?  
قارن بين مدينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند) ومدينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل) أيهما أقدم ؟
- Which subject do you think is the most difficult English, science or Arabic ?  
أي المواد الدراسية تعتقد أن تكون الأكثر صعوبة اللغة الإنجليزية أم العلوم أم اللغة العربية ؟

### Response ✓

- I think the Great Pyramid is taller.  
أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر أطول.
- I think Bangkok is older.  
أعتقد أن مدينة بانكوك هي الأقدم.
- In my opinion, science is the most difficult of all.  
في رأيي، مادة العلوم هي أكثر المواد صعوبة على الإطلاق.



## ② Giving opinions; agreeing and disagreeing :

إعطاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم الموافقة :

### Asking for opinions

السؤال عن الرأي

What is your opinion of / about ..... ?  
ما رأيك في ..... ؟

What do you think of / about ..... ?  
ماذا تعتقد في / ما رأيك في ..... ؟

Do you agree that ..... ? هل توافق أن ..... ؟

### Giving opinions

إعطاء الآراء

I think / believe .....  
أنا أعتقد .....

In my opinion, .....  
في رأيي .....

### Agreeing with someone

الموافقة على الرأي مع شخص ما

I agree. أوافق.

I think so. أعتقد ذلك.

That's what I think. هذا ما أعتقد.

### Disagreeing with someone

عدم الموافقة على الرأي مع شخص ما

- I disagree. لا أوافق.

- I don't agree. لا أوافق.

- I'm afraid / I'm sorry, but .....  
أخشى / يؤسفني أن ولكن ...

- I don't have the same opinion.  
ليس لدى نفس الرأي.

- I don't feel the same as you about that.  
لا أشعر مثلك تمامًا بشأن ذلك.

- I'm not sure about that.  
لست متأكدًا بشأن ذلك.

- You are wrong ! أنت مخطئ!

- What ? No way ! ماذا ؟ هذا مستحيل !

## ③ مناقشة إنجازات بلدك : Discussing your country's achievements :

• How do you feel about your country's achievements ?  
كيف تشعر تجاه إنجازات بلدك ؟

- I feel very proud.  
أشعر بالفخر الشديد

- It makes me happy.  
يجعلني أشعر بالسعادة

- Do you want people from other countries to like and respect your country ?

هل تريد أشخاص من دول أخرى تحب وتحترم بلدك ؟

- What other Egyptian achievements are you proud of ?

ما هي الإنجازات المصرية الأخرى التي تكون فخوراً بها ؟

- Of course / Yes, I do.

نعم بالطبع.

- I think the Administrative Capital and Galala City projects.

اعتقد مشروع العاصمة الإدارية ومشروع مدينة الجلالة.



## Writing

### Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعد في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

#### «The Tahya Masr Bridge»

1. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. هو أكبر كوبرى معلق في العالم.
2. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. تم افتتاحه في القاهرة في مايو ٢٠١٩.
3. They finished it in 32 months. تم الانتهاء من بناءه في ٣٢ شهراً.
4. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. يعبر الكوبرى فوق جزيرة الوراق.
5. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. يستمتع كثير من الناس بالسير عبر الكوبرى.
6. It has a glass floor. هناك أرضية زجاجية لهذا الكوبرى.
7. You can see a beautiful view of the city. يمكنك أن ترى منظر جذاب للمدينة.
8. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset. أفضل وقت لعبور الكوبرى عند غروب الشمس.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب


### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :




1. Tahya Masr bridge is the world's ..... bridge.  
a. highest      b. longest      c. widest      d. biggest
2. It opened in ..... 2019.  
a. May      b. January      c. March      d. April
3. It's ..... m wide.  
a. 68.36      b. 67.30      c. 67.36      d. 68.30
4. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq .....  
a. City      b. Oasis      c. Island      d. Lake

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ahmed is ..... intelligent than Samy.  
a. as      b. most      c. more      d. least
2. This is the ..... company in the world.  
a. more big      b. biggest      c. bigger      d. big
3. Are you proud ..... be Egyptian ?  
a. of      b. at      c. to      d. with
4. The bus was ..... I didn't find a place to stand.  
a. deep      b. heavy      c. crowded      d. fast
5. Many people enjoy walking on the glass ..... of Tahya Masr Bridge.  
a. flower      b. flour      c. floor      d. fire
6. It's important to be polite when you ..... your opinion.  
a. make      b. take      c. give      d. ask
7. Mountain climbing is the most ..... sport. Many people fall and die.  
a. beautiful      b. safe      c. cheap      d. dangerous

8. The opposite of "quiet" is ".....".  
 a. noisy                      b. happy                      c. funny                      d. angry
9. My young brother looks ..... my dad. They are the same.  
 a. like                      b. angry                      c. some                      d. same
10.  What's your ..... of doing a sport every week ?  
 a. dream                      b. thought                      c. opinion                      d. think

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1.  How much people helped to build the bridge ? ( ..... )
2. Salma is the more active girl. ( ..... )
3. He is the good friend of mine. ( ..... )
4.  How long is it ? It's 67.36 metres wide. ( ..... )
5.  What's the more difficult subject at school ? ( ..... )
6. How age is Basem ? ( ..... )
7. Rahma is the most polite girl I've never met. ( ..... )

احرص على إقتناء



المحاضر

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للفصل الأول الإعدادي

المراجعة النهائية

ونماذج الامتحانات

اسم يعلى التفوق





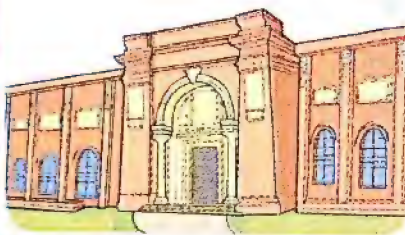
I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

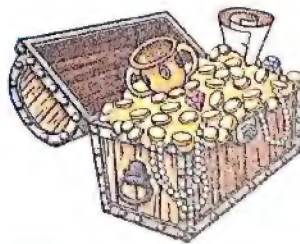
museum (n)

متحف



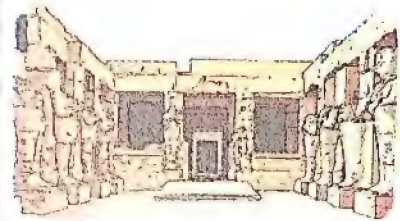
treasure (n)

كنز



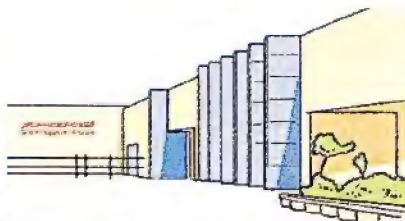
the Karnak Temple

معبد الكرنك



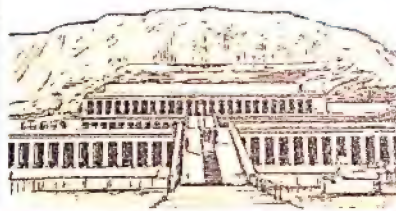
The Grand Egyptian Museum

(GEM) المتحف المصري الكبير



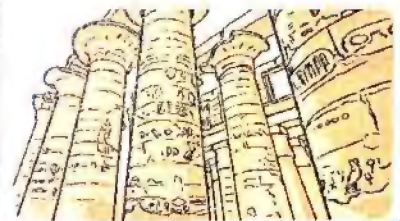
The Valley of the Kings

وادي الملوك



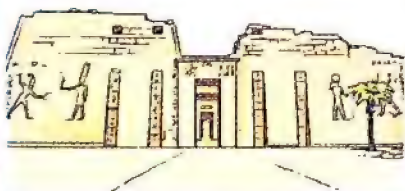
Hypostyle Hall

قاعة هيپوستيل



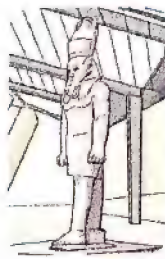
Habu Temple

معبد حابو



Ramses II

رمسيس الثاني



display (v), (n) عرض - معرض



entrance (n)

مدخل

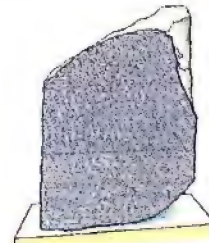


motorbike (n) دراجة بخارية



Rosetta Stone

حجر رشيد





## Key Vocabulary

valuable (adj)	غالي / ذو قيمة	column (n)	عمود
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	design (ed) (v) , (n)	يصمم / تصميم
public (adj)	عام	fountain (n)	نافورة
guidebook (n)	كتاب ارشادي	hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية
collection (n)	مجموعة		

## Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 81

however (adv)	ومع ذلك	welcome (d) (v)	يرحب
special (adj)	خاص - مميز	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	objects (n)	أشياء
plants (n)	نباتات	part (n)	جزء
statue (n)	تمثال	move (d) (v)	ينقل / ينتقل
main (adj)	أساسي - رئيسي	plan (ned) (v) , (n)	يخطط / خطة
square (n)	مربع (الشكل)	Europe (n)	قارة أوروبا
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح - يدع	glass room (n)	غرفة زجاجية
article (n)	مقال	cover (ed) (v)	يغطي
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ	language (n)	لغة

## Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 82

website review (n)	موقع تحليل ونقد	during (prep)	أثناء
wonderful (adj)	رائع	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
stone (adj) (n)	حجري - حجر	expressions (n)	تعبيرات
holiday (n)	أجازة	hotel (n)	فندق
sunny (adj)	مشمس	Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر
parks (n)	حدائق	café (n)	مقهى
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	later (adv)	لاحقاً
writer (n)	كاتب		



## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write يكتب	wrote	written
teach يُعلم / يُدرس	taught	taught
put يضع	put	put
understand يفهم	understood	understood
spend يقضى	spent	spent
choose يختار	chose	chosen

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
further أبعد	nearer أقرب
different مختلف	similar متشابه
famous مشهور	unknown غير معروف
top قمة	bottom قاع
stronger أقوى	weaker أضعف
near قريب	far بعيد

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

column	a tall structure that holds up part of a building	عمود
competition	an event, often followed by a prize, in which people try to be the best at something	مسابقة / منافسة
entrance	the way into a building, such as a door or gate	مدخل
museum	a building to keep and display important objects from the past	متحف
treasure	a quantity of valuable metals, jewels, ..... etc.	كنز

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

one of the ..	واحد من ..	special about	مميز في
refer to	يشير إلى	in the twenty-first century	في القرن الواحد وعشرين
further from	أبعد من	have a wonderful holiday	يقضى أجازة رائعة



the quietest time	الوقت الأكثر هدوءًا	5,000 - square - metre room	حجرة مساحتها ٥٠٠٠ متر مربع
get busier	يزداد ازدحامًا / ينشغل أكثر	similar to	مشابه لـ
more crowded than	أكثر ازدحامًا من	reason for	سبب لـ
on display	معرض / للعرض	for longer	لفترة أطول
space for	مساحة لـ	my favourite part	جزئي المفضل
(be) able to + (inf.)	قادر على	the main idea of	الفكرة الرئيسية لـ
look after	يعتني بـ	show opinion	يعرض رأي
a collection of	مجموعة من	for the first time	لأول مرة
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	part of	جزء من
allow to + inf.	يسمح بـ	spend a lot of time	يقضي وقتًا طويلًا
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	It is expected to ...	من المتوقع أن ...
during the day	اثناء اليوم		

## II Reading and Listening

### Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 19

### The Grand Egyptian Museum

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most **valuable**<sup>(1)</sup> **treasures**<sup>(2)</sup> on **display**<sup>(3)</sup>. However, the museum did not have **space**<sup>(4)</sup> for 100,000 other **objects**<sup>(5)</sup>. In 2002, there was a **competition**<sup>(6)</sup> to **design**<sup>(7)</sup> a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) ذو قيمة (2) كنوز (3) عرض (4) فراغ / مساحة (5) أشياء (6) مسابقة (7) يصمم



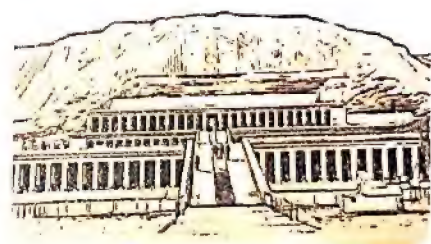
2. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed<sup>(8)</sup> its first visitors<sup>(9)</sup> in 2019. It is further from the city centre<sup>(10)</sup> than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after<sup>(11)</sup> the objects really well.
3. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance<sup>(12)</sup>, with its big plants<sup>(13)</sup> and statues<sup>(14)</sup>. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
4. Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected to take many years of hard work.

### Check Vocabulary

(8) يرحب	(9) زائرين	(10) وسط المدينة	(11) يعتنى بـ	(12) مدخل	(13) نباتات	(14) تماثيل
----------	------------	------------------	---------------	-----------	-------------	-------------

### • on Lesson 6 SB page 20

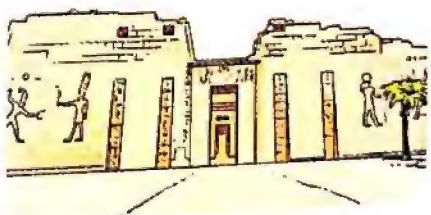
- We had a wonderful holiday<sup>(1)</sup> in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings<sup>(2)</sup> in Luxor is one of the most popular places<sup>(3)</sup> for tourists<sup>(4)</sup> to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic<sup>(5)</sup>!" I am sure it gets busier<sup>(6)</sup> later on during<sup>(7)</sup> the day.



- The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple<sup>(8)</sup>. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall<sup>(9)</sup>, a 5,000-square-metre "room" with 134 stone<sup>(10)</sup> columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.



- In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple<sup>(11)</sup>. It has columns<sup>(12)</sup> similar to<sup>(13)</sup> those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.



### Check Vocabulary

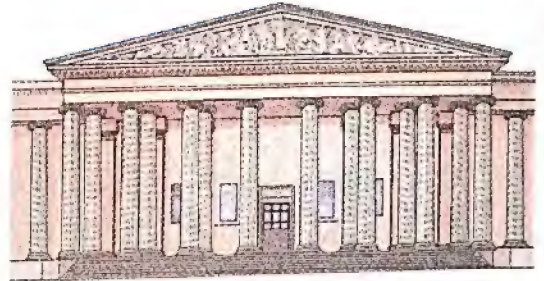
(1) قضينا إجازة رائعة	(2) وادي الملوك	(3) أماكن مشهورة	(4) سياح	(5) رائع	(6) يزداد ازدحاماً
(7) أثناء / خلال	(8) معبد الكرنك	(9) قاعة / بهو	(10) حجر	(11) معبد حابو	(12) أعمدة
					(13) مشابه لـ



• on Lesson 5 WB page 81

## The British Museum

- The **British Museum**<sup>(1)</sup> in London is the oldest **public**<sup>(2)</sup> museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.
- The museum has the biggest **collection**<sup>(3)</sup> of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the **Rosetta Stone**<sup>(4)</sup>. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This **allowed**<sup>(5)</sup> people to understand ancient Egyptian **hieroglyphics**<sup>(6)</sup> for the first time.
- In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the **Great Court**<sup>(7)</sup>. Its big glass room makes it the largest covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.



### Check Vocabulary

(1) المتحف البريطاني (2) عام (3) مجموعة (4) حجر الرشيد (5) سمح (6) اللغة الهيروغليفية (7) الساحة الكبيرة

• on Lesson 6 WB page 82

**Al Azhar Park**<sup>(1)</sup> is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house. That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has **fountains**<sup>(2)</sup>, a lake and **cafés**<sup>(3)</sup>, too. I like going there because there is **space**<sup>(4)</sup> for all our family to have a big **picnic**<sup>(5)</sup> at the weekends! My sister always says, I love it here.



### Check Vocabulary

(1) حديقة الأزهر (2) نافورة (3) مقهى (4) مساحة (5) نزهة في الهواء الطلق





## Videoscript

on Lesson 6 SB page 20 •

Do you know about the seven wonders of the ancient world ?

People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt.

For many centuries, this Lighthouse of Alexandria was the tallest building ever made.

The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse **warned**<sup>(1)</sup> boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention.

We use similar technology today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.

The **Hanging Gardens of Babylon**<sup>(2)</sup> were probably in modern day Iraq. These were beautiful gardens around a huge **palace**<sup>(3)</sup>.

The Statue of Zeus was in ancient Greece. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the

Colossus of Rhodes. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.

The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis... and the Tomb of Mausolus.

Time and **earthquakes**<sup>(4)</sup> destroyed most of these wonders of the world.

After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.

Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza **remains**<sup>(5)</sup>. Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.

Every year, millions of people come to see the Pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist **attractions**<sup>(6)</sup> anywhere.

For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world.

Which building do you like the best ? Why ?

### Check Vocabulary

(1) حذر

(2) حدائق بابل المعلقة

(3) قصر

(4) زلازل

(5) يظل/يمكث

(6) مناطق جذب •

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 on display = on show

معروض

ex.: - Many statues are on display in the museum.

### 2 however = but

ومع ذلك / ولكن (تعبّر عن التناقض)

ex.: - He is clever. However, he doesn't get high marks.

### 3 space

\* space

فراغ / مساحة (اسم لا يُعد)

- There is no space for me here. The room is crowded مزدحمة.

\* space

الفضاء

- My little brother dreams of travelling into space.

### 4 design

\* design (v)

يصمم - يخطط

- My elder brother designed a machine for making coffee.

\* design (n)

تصميم

- There are about 1,557 designs from different countries.

### 5 similar to / the same as

\* similar to

مشابه لـ (لكن يوجد بعض الاختلاف البسيط)

- Salma is similar to her mother.

\* the same (as)

نفسه / متشابه (الدرجة التطابق)

- They are twins. They are the same.

- Hoda is the same as Nouran.

### 6 reason

\* reason (for) + [inf. + ing] / noun

سبب لـ

- What's the reason for your coming late?

\* reason why + فعل + فاعل ...

سبب لـ

- Tell me the reason why you have come late.



## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Toka wants to take part in the school ..... for the talented musicians.  
a. award                      b. competition      c. museum                      d. treasure
2. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most ..... treasures on display.  
a. valuable                      b. cheap                      c. inexpensive                      d. ordinary
3. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the .....  
a. enter                      b. entrance                      c. entry                      d. enters
4. In 2002, there was a competition to ..... a bigger and more modern museum.  
a. design                      b. deliver                      c. destroy                      d. plant
5. The Egyptian Museum contains valuable .....  
a. pleasure                      b. treasures                      c. measures                      d. awards
6. The temple is full of ..... that carry its roof. They are made of stone.  
a. walls                      b. columns                      c. trees                      d. gardens
7. Museums help us to ..... our historical objects for other people.  
a. play                      b. apply                      c. display                      d. pay

## Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The old museum didn't have ..... for 100,000 ancient objects.  
a. spice                      b. space                      c. trace                      d. race
2. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) ..... its first visitors in 2019.  
a. came                      b. left                      c. hit                      d. welcomed

3. What is the ..... for your coming late ?  
a. season      b. reason      c. cause      d. expression
4. A ..... is a period of a hundred years.  
a. year      b. decade      c. century      d. week
5. You can ..... a lot of time at Al Azhar Park.  
a. set      b. spend      c. stand      d. shop
6. These two bags are the .....  
a. similar      b. same      c. different      d. equal
7. My mother doesn't ..... me to play in the street.  
a. collect      b. get      c. contain      d. allow
8. Football is ..... with all the Egyptians.  
a. popular      b. famous      c. known      d. unknown

## IV Speaking corner

### Asking and answering questions about museums :

السؤال عن المتاحف والإجابة عليها :

#### Questions

- Why do we have museums ?

لماذا لدينا متاحف ؟

- Who is your favourite historical character ?

من هي شخصيتك التاريخية المفضلة ؟

- What objects are in the museum ?

ما هي الأشياء الموجودة في المتحف ؟

- What do you think about the Karnak Temple ?

ما رأيك في معبد الكرنك ؟

- When should we go to the museum ?

متى يجب علينا أن نذهب إلى المتحف ؟

#### Answers

- We have museums to protect historical objects.

لدينا متاحف لكي نحمل الأشياء التاريخية.

- My favourite historical character is Ramses II.

شخصيتي التاريخية المفضلة هو رمسيس الثاني

- Statues and valuable treasures.

التمثال والكنوز القيمة.

- I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.

أعتقد أنه أكثر ازدحاماً من وادي الملوك.

- We should go there early because that is the quietest time.

علينا أن نذهب إلى هناك مبكراً لأنه أكثر الأوقات هدوءاً.



## Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

### «A wonderful holiday in Egypt»

1. Egypt has a long and ancient history. مصر لديها تاريخ طويل وقديم.
2. I went to Egypt to spend my holiday. ذهبت إلى مصر لقضاء عطلة.
3. My family and I went to the Egyptian museum. أنا وعائلتي ذهبنا إلى المتحف المصري.
4. We saw statues and treasures. لقد رأينا التماثيل والكنوز.
5. We went to Luxor and visited The Valley of the Kings. ذهبنا إلى الأقصر وقمنا بزيارة وادي الملوك.
6. The Karnak Temple was really crowded. معبد الكرنك كان مزدحمًا بالفعل.
7. Habu Temple has many columns. معبد هابو لديه الكثير من الأعمدة.
8. It was a great holiday. لقد كانت أجازة رائعة.

كتابة الموضوعات الإنشائية  
من الأسئلة الهامة في الورقة الامتحانية

تدرب في

- ◀ Writing Skill في نهاية كل وحدة.
- ◀ الموضوعات الإنشائية مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.
- ◀ الموضوعات الإنشائية في ملحق المعاصر.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The Valley of the ..... is in Luxor.  
a. Queens      b. Kings      c. Pupils      d. People
2. It is one of the most popular places for ..... to visit.  
a. tourists      b. farmers      c. engineers      d. architects
3. We went early because that is the ..... time.  
a. busiest      b. quietest      c. cleanest      d. best
4. It gets busier later on during the .....  
a. evening      b. afternoon      c. morning      d. day

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** What do you know ..... the Grand Egyptian Museum ?  
a. on      b. at      c. of      d. about
2. This is a / an ..... film. It tells us about the life of Alexander the Great.  
a. romantic      b. action      c. historical      d. adventure
3. The Valley of the Kings is one of the most ..... places for tourists to visit.  
a. dangerous      b. expensive      c. popular      d. crowded
4. "Empty" is the opposite of " ..... "  
a. dangerous      b. crowded      c. beautiful      d. modern
5. This lesson is the ..... one.  
a. difficult      b. most difficult      c. more difficult      d. as difficult
6. This problem is easy. It's the ..... one I've ever solved.  
a. easiest      b. easier      c. more easy      d. the most easy
7. This car park is 10 metres under the ground. It's very .....  
a. high      b. long      c. deep      d. tall



8. In my opinion, history is the most interesting..... .  
a. colour                      b. country                      c. park                      d. subject
9. 58 My uncle is the ..... person in my family. No one is older than him.  
a. youngest                      b. tallest                      c. oldest                      d. deepest
10. The police try to ..... people from thieves and criminals.  
a. protect                      b. destroy                      c. hide                      d. refuse

**3** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** The Karnak Temple is most crowded than the Valley of the Kings. ( ..... )
2. We went early because that is the quieter time. ( ..... )
3. Luxor is the better place to visit in winter. ( ..... )
4. **WB** Trains are fast than cars. ( ..... )

**4** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

## "The Grand Egyptian museum"

*[The page contains horizontal dashed lines for writing.]*



## 1. Vocabulary

bridge	كوبرى	opinion	رأى
tunnel	نفق	view	منظر
desert road	طريق صحراوي	agree	يوافق
crowded	مزدحم	disagree	يرفض
population	تعداد السكان	treasure	كنز
measurement	وحدة قياس / قياس	entrance	مدخل
tourists	سياح	valuable	قيم
suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق	column	عمود
sunset	غروب الشمس	historical	تاريخي
mountain climbing	تسلق الجبال	objects	أشياء
achievements	إنجازات	statue	تمثال
proud	فخور	sunny	مشمس

## 2. Language

**Comparative and superlative forms :** صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل :

	المقارنة بين اثنين Comparative	المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين Superlative
Short adjectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- She is <b>taller than</b> her mother.</li> <li>- He is <b>shorter than</b> his brother.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- He is <b>the tallest</b> person in the family.</li> <li>- She is <b>the shortest</b> of all.</li> </ul>
Long adjectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Maths is <b>more difficult than</b> English.</li> <li>- Football is <b>less dangerous than</b> mountain climbing.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The lion is <b>the most dangerous</b> animal.</li> <li>- Ali is <b>the least intelligent</b> person.</li> </ul>



### 3. Speaking

#### Asking for opinions

- What's your opinion about ... ?
- What do you think about ... ?

السؤال عن الرأي

ما رأيك في .....

ماذا تعتقد في .....

#### Giving opinions

- I think ...
- I believe ...
- In my opinion, ...

إعطاء الرأي

أعتقد .....

أعتقد .....

في رأيي، .....

### 4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

#### Model Paragraph

##### "An old building in Egypt"

The Egyptian Museum is the oldest museum in Cairo. It opened in 1835. There were many of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum because there was no space in the museum for 100,000 other objects. The competition had many designs from more than 80 different countries. The new museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. The most beautiful part of the museum is the entrance with its statues.

### 5. Writing Skill



#### Study

\* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

#### Related Topics

الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة

- (1) The Tahya Masr Bridge
- (2) Famous places in Egypt

#### Helpful Expressions

تعبيرات مساعدة

- I had a wonderful holiday in (اسم بلد).
- (اسم بلد) is in (اسم مكان سياحي).
- Some people think, (اسم مكان سياحي) is the most beautiful place.

- (3) Interesting places in Egypt  
 (4) A wonderful holiday  
 (5) The Grand Egyptian museum.

- In my opinion, (اسم مكان سياحي) is the best place in Egypt.  
 - (اسم مكان سياحي) is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit.  
 - I like (اسم مكان سياحي) because it has (شيء في المكان).  
 - (اسم مكان سياحي) took many years to be built.



## Try

\* استخدم التعبيرات السابقة لتكون جملة على كل كلمة :

Word	Try to make a sentence
- Tahya Masr Bridge	I like the Tahya Masr Bridge because it has a glass floor.
- The Karnak Temple	.....
- The Valley of the Kings	.....
- Alexandria Library	.....
- Holiday	.....



## Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
 "Famous places in Egypt".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





# Test on unit 8



تنويه

يمكنك حل  
الاختبار إلكترونياً  
وتصويبه

## A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Where is the world's widest bridge ?  
a. In Cairo      b. In London      c. In Tokyo      d. In New York
- What do people enjoy doing across the bridge ?  
a. Running      b. Taking photos      c. Walking      d. Swimming
- When did the world's widest bridge open ? - In .....  
a. 2009      b. 2000      c. 1909      d. 2019
- What can you see under your feet on that bridge ?  
a. Glass      b. The river      c. People      d. Cairo

## B. Language Function

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Osama : Hi ! Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hi ! Osama. Where did you go yesterday ?

Osama : I went to enjoy (1) ..... across Tahya Masr Bridge.

Ahmed : Oh really. How (2) ..... did it take to finish it ?

Osama : It took 32 months to finish.

Ahmed : Do you know that it's the world's (3) ..... suspension Bridge ?

Osama : Yes, of (4) .....

Ahmed : What is the best (5) ..... to cross the bridge ?

Osama : At sunset !

Ahmed : What a beautiful view !

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum did not have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for **valuable** objects, more people can see **them** and it is able to look after the objects really well.

One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?

.....

3. Why do you think they built the Grand Egyptian Museum ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined word "**valuable**" means .....

- a. harmful      b. expensive      c. cheap      d. unimportant

5. The old museum is ..... than GEM.

- a. bigger      b. smaller  
c. more valuable      d. not older than

6. The old museum is ..... the city centre.

- a. near      b. far from      c. not in      d. away from

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The centre of Cairo is very ..... There are a lot of people and cars.

- a. narrow      b. quiet      c. crowded      d. empty

2. **SB** The Tahya Masr Bridge is the widest ..... bridge in the world.

- a. suspected      b. suspension      c. supported      d. dangerous



3. It's a/an ..... scene to have all this rubbish in the street.  
a. cheerful      b. exciting      c. wonderful      d. ugly
4. I enjoy walking across the Qasr El Nil .....  
a. Bridge      b. Pyramid      c. Citadel      d. Tower
5. You can put all these books on the desk. There's enough .....  
a. wood      b. currency      c. space      d. centre
6. The museum has a lot of valuable .....  
a. numbers      b. competitions      c. pyramids      d. treasures
7. The bridge was built on stone ..... to stay strong.  
a. shows      b. valleys      c. columns      d. lines
8. Toka is ..... than Rokaya.  
a. quiet      b. quieter      c. quietest      d. more quiet
9. I think Siwa is the ..... place in Egypt.  
a. nice      b. nicer      c. nicest      d. the nicest
10. **WB** I like going to Al Azhar Park ..... there is a space for all my family there.  
a. so      b. because      c. but      d. to

**5 Read and correct the underlined word :**

1. **SB** The Nile is long river in the world. ( ..... )
2. I think Cairo has more population in Egypt. ( ..... )
3. My brother is good at English than social studies. ( ..... )
4. Who is tallest, Nabil or your brother ? ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

مخاطبته في نهاية الكتاب

**"Tahya Masr Bridge"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Unit 9

## Adventure !



### Objectives

- **Reading :**  
Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days
- **Writing :**  
A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip
- **Listening :**  
Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities
- **Speaking :**  
Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather
- **Language :**  
going to for plans; reflexive pronouns
- **Life Skills :**  
Negotiating; respect the opinions of others

- يمكنك استخدام فكرة Time saving  
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة 58 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب  
• العلامة 72 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات





## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

diving (n)

الغطس



mountain biking (n)

رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال



sailing (n)

رياضة الإبحار



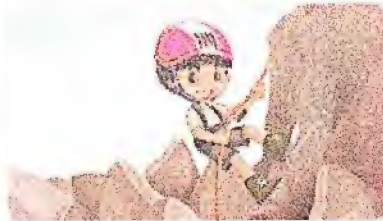
kayaking (n)

رياضة التجديف بالزورق



rock climbing (n)

رياضة تسلق الصخور



zip lining (n)

رياضة الإنزلاق بالحبال



trekking (n) الإرتحال/التجوال  
(رياضة السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة)



windsurfing (n)

رياضة ركوب الأمواج



tent (n)

خيمة



camel (n)

جمل



climb (ed) (v)

يتسلق



carry (ied) (v)

يحمل





## Key Vocabulary

water sport (n)	رياضة مائية	plan (ned) (v) , (n)	يخطط / خطة
mountain sport (n)	رياضة جبلية	negotiate (d) (v)	يتفاوض
adventure (n)	مغامرة	negotiation (n)	تفاوض
argument (n)	جدال	experience (n)	تجربة - خبرة

## Famous places

### أماكن مشهورة

Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	Serabit el Khadem	منطقة سرابيط الخادم
Sinai	سيناء	Ein Kidd	منطقة عين كيد
Dahab	مدينة دهب	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Ras Shetan	منطقة رأس شيطان		

## Lesson 1

SB pages 22&23 WB page 84

activities (n)	أنشطة	scary (adj)	مخيف
article (n)	مقال	try (ied) (v)	يجرب / يحاول
wind (n)	رياح	bit (n), (adj)	قليلاً

## Lesson 2

SB pages 24&25 WB page 85

nearly (adv)	تقريباً / حوالى	carefully (adv)	بعناية
journey (n)	رحلة طويلة	ideas (n)	أفكار
Bedouin (n), (adj)	بدو / بدوى	skills (n)	مهارات
guide (n)	مرشد	equipment (n)	معدات
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	arrive (d) (v)	يصل
way (n)	طريق	dates (n)	تواريخ
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
say يقول	said	said
think يعتقد	thought	thought
sleep ينام	slept	slept
leave يغادر / يرحل	left	left
find يجد	found	found
get يحصل على	got	got
win يفوز	won	won



lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	
sing	يغنى	sang	lost sung

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
dangerous	safe
start	finish
leave	arrive
carefully	carelessly

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>diving</b>	a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals..., etc.	رياضة الغطس
<b>kayaking</b>	a sport or hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat	رياضة التجديف بالزورق
<b>mountain biking</b>	a sport where someone rides a bike not on roads	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال
<b>rock climbing</b>	a sport where someone climbs up rocks	رياضة تسلق الصخور
<b>sailing</b>	a sport where someone sails a boat or a yacht	رياضة الإبحار
<b>tent</b>	something you sleep in when you go camping	خيمة
<b>guide</b>	a person who shows a place to tourists	مرشد
<b>trekking</b>	a sport where someone walks, usually for long distances in the mountains or the countryside with difficulty	(البرتحال أو التجوال) رحلة طويلة سيراً على الأقدام (ذات ظروف صعبة)
<b>windsurfing</b>	a sport where someone travels on water while standing on a board with a sail	ركوب الأمواج (التزحلق على الماء)
<b>journey</b>	a long trip from one place to another.	رحلة طويلة
<b>adventure</b>	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens	مغامرة
<b>zip lining</b>	a sport where someone slides along a metal wire between two high points	رياضة الإنزلاق بالحبال
<b>wind</b>	is the movement of air	رياح



## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look scary	يبدو مخيفاً	go windsurfing	يمارس رياضة ركوب الأمواج
look fun	يبدو ممتعاً	try rock climbing	يجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور
so much to do	كثيراً لنفعله	across Sinai	عبر سيناء
look at	ينظر إلى	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	stay with	يقيم مع
arrive on	يصل في (تاريخ)	help me find the way	يساعدني في إيجاد الطريق
travel from	يسافر من (مكان)	take me 43 days	يستغرق مني ثلاثة وأربعون يوماً
leave on	يغادر في (تاريخ)	get the best ideas	يحصل على أفضل الأفكار
plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل	see you then	أراك في ذلك الوقت
do anything scary	يفعل أي شيء مخيف	cook a meal	يطهو وجبة
come home on	يعود إلى المنزل في (تاريخ)	there is no time !	لا يوجد وقت كافٍ
travel home by	يسافر إلى وطنه بواسطة	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
that's right !	هذا صحيح	the best place to shop	أفضل مكان للتسوق
I'd love to ...	أود أن ...	sleep by a pool	ينام بجانب حمام سباحة
wake up in a tent	يستيقظ في خيمة		

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

diving	يذهب للغوص	kayaking	يذهب للتجديف بالزورق
windsurfing	يذهب لركوب الأمواج	mountain biking	
sailing	يذهب للإبحار		يذهب لركوب الدراجات على الجبال
rock climbing	يذهب للتسلق على الصخور	zip lining	يذهب للإنزلاق بالحبال
camping	يقيم (يعسكر)	trekking	يذهب لرحلة طويلة
mountain climbing	يذهب لتسلق الجبال	down the river	ينزل قاع النهر
to the mountain	يذهب للجبل	on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
to the beach	يذهب للشاطئ		

لاحظ : أن الفعل (go) يتبعه الأنشطة المنتهية بـ (ing)

## How to write the date

We write

We say

1<sup>st</sup> March

the first of March

30<sup>th</sup> March

the thirtieth of March



## Ordinal Numbers

1 <sup>st</sup>	first	12 <sup>th</sup>	twelfth	23 <sup>rd</sup>	twenty-third
2 <sup>nd</sup>	second	13 <sup>th</sup>	thirteenth	24 <sup>th</sup>	twenty-fourth
3 <sup>rd</sup>	third	14 <sup>th</sup>	fourteenth	25 <sup>th</sup>	twenty-fifth
4 <sup>th</sup>	fourth	15 <sup>th</sup>	fifteenth	26 <sup>th</sup>	twenty-sixth
5 <sup>th</sup>	fifth	16 <sup>th</sup>	sixteenth	27 <sup>th</sup>	twenty-seventh
6 <sup>th</sup>	sixth	17 <sup>th</sup>	seventeenth	28 <sup>th</sup>	twenty-eighth
7 <sup>th</sup>	seventh	18 <sup>th</sup>	eighteenth	29 <sup>th</sup>	twenty-ninth
8 <sup>th</sup>	eighth	19 <sup>th</sup>	nineteenth	30 <sup>th</sup>	thirtieth
9 <sup>th</sup>	ninth	20 <sup>th</sup>	twentieth	31 <sup>st</sup>	thirty-first
10 <sup>th</sup>	tenth	21 <sup>st</sup>	twenty-first		
11 <sup>th</sup>	eleventh	22 <sup>nd</sup>	twenty-second		

## II Reading and listening

### Listening

#### on Lesson 1 SB page 23

1 **Imad** : What are you looking at, Hassan ?

**Hassan** : Hi Imad. It's an **article**<sup>(1)</sup> about **adventure sports**<sup>(2)</sup> in Egypt.

**Imad** : Oh yes! Last year, I went **diving**<sup>(3)</sup> in the Red Sea. It was **amazing**<sup>(4)</sup>!

**Hassan** : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try **windsurfing**<sup>(5)</sup>, too.

**Imad** : What about **rock climbing**<sup>(6)</sup> ?

**Hassan** : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a **bit dangerous**<sup>(7)</sup>, but I like trekking in the mountains.



#### Check Vocabulary

مقال (1) رياضات المغامرة (2) غطس (3) مدهش (4) رياضة ركوب الأمواج (5) تسلق الصخور (6) خطير قليلاً (7)

**Imad** : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.

**Hassan** : Are you going to try **mountain biking**<sup>(8)</sup>, Imad ?

**Imad** : No, I'm not going to do anything **scary**<sup>(9)</sup>. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

**Hassan** : I think you're right. **Zip lining**<sup>(10)</sup> looks scary, too.

**Imad** : I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!

**Hassan** : Really ? **No way**<sup>(11)</sup> !



#### Check Vocabulary

(8) رياضة دراجات الجبال

(9) مخيف

(10) الانزلاق بالحبال

(11) مستحيل

#### on Lesson 1 SB page 23

**2 Mustafa** : I'm going to go to the mountains.

**Hazem** : Ok. Are you going to go trekking ?

**Mustafa** : No, I'm not.

**Hazem** : Are you going to go rock climbing ?

**Mustafa** : Yes, I am!

**Hazem** : Your bag is ... D.

**Mustafa** : That's right.

**Hazem** : My turn. I'm going to the beach.

**Mustafa** : Are you going to go kayaking ?

**Hazem** : No, I'm not.

**Mustafa** : Are you going to go diving ?

**Hazem** : Yes, I am.

**Mustafa** : Your bag is ... B.





## Reading

### • on Lesson 1 SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to **go trekking**<sup>(1)</sup> in the **mountains**<sup>(2)</sup>. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary !

Tomorrow, we're going to try **windsurfing**<sup>(3)</sup> in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! We're not going to **go kayaking**<sup>(4)</sup>. There is no time!

Love, Reem

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) يذهب فى رحلة صعبة غالباً سيراً على الأقدام (2) جبال (3) رياضة ركوب الأمواج (4) يمارس رياضة التجديف، بالزوارق

### • on Lesson 2 SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking **across Sinai**<sup>(1)</sup>. It's going to be a big **adventure**<sup>(2)</sup> ! I'm going to travel **nearly**<sup>(3)</sup> 500 kilometres **through mountains**<sup>(4)</sup> from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a **tent**<sup>(5)</sup> and stay with **Bedouin families**<sup>(6)</sup>. I'm going to have a **guide**<sup>(7)</sup> to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) عبر سيناء (2) مغامرة (3) تقريباً (4) خلال الجبال (5) خيمة (6) عائلات بدوية (7) مرشد

Here's my plan :

**3<sup>rd</sup> March**

leave Ras Shetan

**14<sup>th</sup> March**

arrive at Ein Kidd

**30<sup>th</sup> March**

arrive at St Catherine

**1<sup>st</sup> April**

climb Mount Catherine

**15<sup>th</sup> April**

arrive at Serabit el Khadem



## Listening

### • on Lesson 2 SB page 25

#### 1 Voice :

The first of April.

The second of May.

The third of August.

The fourteenth of September.

The twenty first of December.

The thirtieth of January.

### • on Lesson 2 SB page 25

#### 2 Mariam : Next year, I'm going to go sailing down the Nile with my family.

We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28<sup>th</sup> December, we're going to arrive in Luxor on 4<sup>th</sup> January.



• on Lesson 2 WB page 85

3 Listen and write the dates :

**Girl :** This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25<sup>th</sup> July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30<sup>th</sup> July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3<sup>rd</sup> August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6<sup>th</sup> August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!



# General

## Notes on Reading and Listening

1 \* in + month / year

فى (شهر - سنة)

**ex.:** His journey is going to start **in** April.

\* on + date

فى (تاريخ)

**ex.:** He is going to visit Ras Shetan **on** 14<sup>th</sup> March.

\* on + days of the week

فى (يوم من أيام الأسبوع)

**ex.:** We don't go to school **on** Friday.

2 Compound nouns

الأسماء المركبة

هى عبارة عن اسم مكون من كلمتين أو أكثر مثل :

\* **water sport** رياضة مائية

\* **school library** مكتبة مدرسية

\* **team sport** رياضة جماعية

\* **football match** مباراة كرة قدم

\* **mountain sport** رياضة جبلية

\* **shoe shop** محل أحذية

3 scary - scared

\* **scary** = frightening

مُخيف - مرعب

**ex.:** Mountain biking looks **scary**.

\* **scared** = afraid = frightened

خائف - مرعوب

**ex.:** Basem was **scared** when he saw the snake.

• لاحظ الأفعال الآتية واستخدامها مع الرياضات والأنشطة المختلفة.

4

play  
football  
basketball  
tennis  
volleyball  
squash

do  
karate  
boxing  
judo

go  
swimming  
windsurfing  
diving  
trekking

5 **help + المصدر / to + المصدر + مفعول به**

يساعد

ex.: I'm going to have a guide to **help** me find / to find the way.

6 **arrive in / arrive at**

- arrive in + (بشكل عام) يصل إلى مكان كبير
- She **arrived in** Cairo at 7 p.m.
- arrive at + (مكان محدد) يصل إلى مكان صغير
- He **arrived at** school late.

7 **It is + صفة + (to + inf.)**

ex.: It's important to eat fresh vegetables.

8 **negotiate / negotiation**

\* **negotiate (v)**

يتفاوض

ex.: - Mr Helmy is good at **negotiating**.

\* **negotiation (n)**

تفاوض

ex.: - **Negotiation** needs a good skill مهارة.

9 **equipment**

معدات - أجهزة

اسم لا يُعد (تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد وليس لها جمع)

ex.: - This **equipment** is so useful.

10 **plan**

\* **plan (v) + (to + inf.)**

يخطط

ex.: - He has **planned** to travel to Alexandria.

\* **plan (n)**

خطة

ex.: - My **plan** for the weekend is to go on a picnic in the countryside.



## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Many tourists like to go ..... when they go on a journey on the Red Sea.  
a. windsurfing      b. diving      c. driving      d. trekking
- Rock ..... is one of the most dangerous sports.  
a. gardening      b. forming      c. climbing      d. riding
- When we go camping, we sleep in a .....  
a. castle      b. hotel      c. tent      d. hut
- It's important to ..... with other people when you need to decide something important.  
a. negotiate      b. play      c. call      d. climb
- SB** In Dahab, we're going to go ..... in the mountains.  
a. diving      b. trekking      c. windsurfing      d. kayaking
- WB** All you need to go ..... is a boat and some wind.  
a. sailing      b. trekking      c. diving      d. zip lining
- WB** I love ..... because I'm good at swimming under water.  
a. zip lining      b. diving      c. kayaking      d. windsurfing
- WB** I don't want to have a / an ..... on holiday, I want to sleep by a pool !  
a. desert      b. journey      c. guide      d. adventure

## Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Rock climbing is a / an ..... sport.  
a. water      b. safe      c. easy      d. dangerous
- Imad ..... diving last year.  
a. made      b. went      c. gave      d. took
- Hassan would like to ..... mountain biking. He has never practised it before.  
a. make      b. try      c. achieve      d. take

4. The journey to Ras Shetan ..... twenty days in the desert of Sinai.  
a. makes                      b. gives                      c. takes                      d. spends
5. Diving is a ..... sport.  
a. desert                      b. mountain                      c. water                      d. jungle
6. I don't like ..... films because they make me feel frightened.  
a. comedy                      b. scary                      c. family                      d. happy
7. **SB** In the desert, we need a/an ..... to help us find the way and a camel to carry food and water.  
a. farmer                      b. guide                      c. engineer                      d. pilot
8. When you go rock climbing, you need some ..... to take with you.  
a. excitement                      b. equipment                      c. comparison                      d. information
9. .... are people who live in the desert.  
a. Bedouins                      b. Runners                      c. Beginners                      d. Villagers
10. He was born on the 1<sup>st</sup> of March. This means the ..... of March.  
a. first                      b. fifth                      c. fourth                      d. fifteenth
11. A ..... is the best animal that can live and travel in the desert.  
a. horse                      b. donkey                      c. cow                      d. camel

## III

## Language

## Future with "going to" : (be) going to باستخدام المستقبل

## Form التكوين

1

## Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I	→	am			
He, she, It,	→	is	+	going to	+ inf.
أو اسم مفرد					مصدر الفعل
you, we, They,	→	are			
أو اسم جمع					

ex. I'm going to visit Alexandria next week.



- 2 Negative Statements** → **Subject + am / is / are + not + going to + (inf.)**  
 الجمل الخبرية المنفية      الفاعل      مصدر الفعل
- ex. - They are not going to visit Alexandria.  
 - He is not going to eat fish.

- 3 Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام
- A Yes / No question :** ( أ ) السؤال بـ «هل» :
- Am / Is / Are + subject + going to + (inf.) + .....?**  
 الفاعل      مصدر الفعل
- ex. \* Is she going to play tennis ?  
 - Yes, she is.      - No, she isn't.
- B Wh-question :** ( ب ) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :
- question word + am / is / are + subject + going to + (inf.) + ...?**  
 كلمة استفهام      الفاعل      مصدر الفعل
- ex. What are you going to eat for lunch?

## Usage الاستخدام

### تستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات الآتية :

- 1 Plans & intentions :** ( ١ ) عند التخطيط المسبق أو النية لعمل شيء ما :
- ex. - He is going to spend a week in Alexandria.  
 - I'm going to visit Ali tomorrow.  
 - لاحظ أن التخطيط المسبق أو النية تأتي مع كلمات مثل :  
 intend ينوي / plan يخطط / make a decision يتخذ قرار
- ex. - We're going to fly to London next week. We've decided that.
- 2 Prediction with evidence :** ( ٢ ) التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع وجود دليل على ذلك :
- ex. - Look at those dark clouds ! It's going to rain.  
 هنا دليل قوى على أن السماء ستمطر (السحب سوداء)
- 3 Actions which are about to happen.** ( ٣ ) أحداث على وشك الوقوع.
- ex. - Watch out ! Your car is going to crash.

# Exercises on Structures

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** Is Reem going to ..... trekking this afternoon ?  
 a. going                      b. goes                      c. went                      d. go
2. I ..... not going to try rock climbing. It's very dangerous !  
 a. is                      b. am                      c. are                      d. isn't
3. **SB** Tomorrow, we're ..... to try windsurfing in the morning.  
 a. goes                      b. going                      c. went                      d. go
4. Are you ..... travel home by bus after school ?  
 a. will go                      b. going to                      c. go                      d. go to
5. We ..... trekking, it's our intention.  
 a. are going                      b. are going to go                      c. will go                      d. would go
6. Sama ..... take the train to Aswan next week. She has her ticket.  
 a. going to                      b. will                      c. is going to                      d. won't
7. The sky is full of clouds. It .....  
 a. will rain                      b. rains                      c. is going to rain                      d. won't rain
8. Lamees is going to ..... the game.  
 a. wins                      b. win                      c. winning                      d. won
9. I can't ride a motorbike very well. I ..... !  
 a. crash                      b. crashed  
 c. am going to crash                      d. going to crash
10. **SB** Who ..... cook your meal this evening ?  
 a. going to                      b. is going to                      c. will go                      d. would go

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I don't going to travel this week. ( ..... )
2. Will you going to visit your grandmother ? ( ..... )
3. **SB** He is going to slept in a tent. ( ..... )
4. I bought some paint and a brush. I going to paint my room tomorrow. ( ..... )



## IV Speaking corner

### Discussing activities and travel plans

مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر

#### Questions ?

- What are you going to do this weekend ?

ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟

- Are you going to try rock climbing ?

هل ستجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور ؟

#### Answers ✓

I am going to visit Sinai.

سأزور سيناء.

- Yes, I am.

- No, I am not.

## V Writing

### Stop here !

الجميل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

1. I am going to go trekking across Sinai. سأقوم برحلة سيرًا على الأقدام عبر سيناء.
2. It's going to be a big adventure. ستكون مغامرة كبيرة.
3. I am going to try zip lining. سوف أجرب رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال.
4. It looks fun. إنها تبدو ممتعة / شيقة.
5. It's too scary. إنه مخيف جدًا.
6. I am going to go windsurfing / diving. سوف أمارس رياضة ركوب الأمواج / الغطس.
7. I am going to have a guide to help me find the way. سيكون لدى مرشد ليساعدني أن أجد الطريق.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Where is Eman ?  
a. In Dahab      b. In Aswan      c. In Ras Mohamed      d. In Cairo
2. Who is Eman going with ?  
a. With her father      b. With her friends  
c. With her family      d. With a cousin
3. What's Eman going to Try ? - .....  
a. Mountain climbing      b. Rock climbing  
c. Cycling      d. Zip lining
4. When are they going to go trekking ?  
a. This afternoon      b. This morning  
c. This evening      d. This night

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sameh : Hello Ramzy. Where are you going ?

Ramzy : To the (1) .....

Sameh : Are you going to go trekking on the mountains ?

Ramzy : (2) ....., I'm not.

Sameh : So, (3) ..... are you going to do ?

Ramzy : I'm going to go rock climbing. What about you ?

Sameh : I'm going to the beach.

Ramzy : (4) ..... ?

Sameh : To go diving.

Ramzy : Have a nice (5) .....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What are your ..... for the next holiday ?  
a. planes      b. plans      c. plants      d. planets

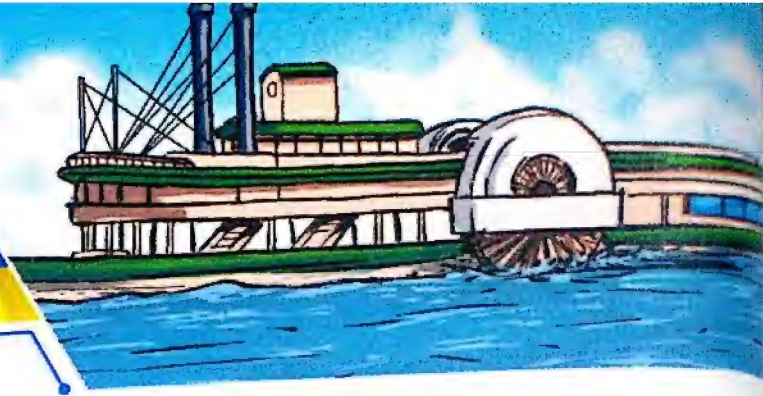


2. I'm going to go mountain .....  
 a. climbing      b. flying      c. diving      d. winning
3. "Adventure" means a/an ..... experience when something unusual or dangerous happens.  
 a. boring      b. tiring      c. exciting      d. funny
4. A/An ..... helps you find the way.  
 a. carpenter      b. architect      c. teacher      d. guide
5. .... families live in the desert.  
 a. Ancient      b. Bedouin      c. Village      d. City
6. **SB** We're going to go ..... in the Red Sea.  
 a. riding      b. trekking      c. windsurfing      d. climbing
7. **WB** They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult .....  
 a. trip      b. journey      c. adventure      d. tent
8. I ..... abroad. It's my plan.  
 a. 'm going to travel      b. 'll travel  
 c. travelled      d. would have travelled
9. What's he going ..... ?  
 a. do      b. doing      c. to doing      d. to do
10. He wants to visit a lot of places at the Red Sea. He ..... to the Red Sea.  
 a. travel      b. travelled  
 c. has travelled      d. is going to travel

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We're going to travel last month. ( ..... )
2. He's going sleeping for 10 hours. ( ..... )
3. His birthday is on the third from May. ( ..... )
4. **SB** Is she go to go kayaking ? ( ..... )





# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

dark clouds (n) سحب ملبدة بالغيوم



rain (ed) (v) (n) تمطر / مطر



storm (n)

عاصفة



sunny (adj)

مشمس



rocks (n)

صخور



newspaper article (n)

مقال بجريدة



railway line (n) خط سكة حديد



plane (n)

طائرة



ship (n)

سفينة



stormy (adj)

عاصف



snowy (adj)

جليدي



towel (n) منشفة / فوطة





## Key Vocabulary

weather (n)	طقس	transport (n)	مواصلات
-------------	-----	---------------	---------

## Lesson 3

SB pages 26 &amp; 27 WB page 86

postcard (n)	كارت بريدى	sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمس
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
dry (ied) (v) (adj)	يجفف - جاف	top (n)	قمة / أعلى
presentation (n)	عرض - تقديم	wet (adj)	مبلل - رطب
fire (n)	نار	frightened (adj)	خائف
eagle (n)	نسر	excited (adj)	منفعل / مثار
mirror (n)	مرآة	terrible (adj)	فظيح
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما		

## Famous cities and countries

دول ومدن مشهورة

Egypt	مصر	USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا	Hong Kong	مدينة هونغ كونج
Oman	دولة سلطنة عُمان	Suez	مدينة السويس
London	مدينة لندن	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية
Japan	دولة اليابان	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
India	دولة الهند	Kolkata	مدينة كلكتا (عاصمة الهند القديمة)
Mumbai	مدينة مومباي (الهند)	New York	مدينة نيويورك
San Francisco	مدينة سان فرانسيسكو (الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية)	England	إنجلترا
		French (n), (adj)	اللغة الفرنسية - فرنسي

## Weather words

كلمات خاصة بالطقس

Noun	اسم	Adjective	صفة
rain	مطر	rainy	ممطر
sun	شمس	sunny	شمس
cloud	سحابة	cloudy	ملبد بالسحاب
snow	جليد	snowy	مكسو بالجليد - مثلج
storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
wind	رياح	windy	عاصف (شديد الرياح)
fog	ضباب	foggy	ضبابي

## Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 87

mistake (n)	خطأ	introduction (n)	مقدمة
complete (d) (v)	يكمل / ينهي	type (n)	نوع
British (adj)	بريطاني (الجنسية)	character (n)	شخصية
challenge (n)	تحدي	chart (n)	رسم بياني
return (ed) (v)	يعود	support (ed) (v)	يدعم / يؤيد

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get يحصل على	got	got / gotten
come يأتي	came	come
do يفعل	did	done
stand يقف	stood	stood
fall يسقط	fell	fallen
hurt يجرح / يؤدي	hurt	hurt
give يعطي	gave	given
take يأخذ	took	taken
read يقرأ	read	read
put يضع	put	put
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
make يصنع / يؤدي	made	made
tell يُخبر	told	told
meet يقابل	met	met
sit يجلس	sat	sat
think يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
teach يُدرّس	taught	taught

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
top قمة	bottom قاع
dark غامق / مظلم	light فاتح
warm دافئ	cool مائل للبرودة
early مبكر	late متأخر



east	شرق	west	غرب
up	أعلى	down	أسفل
wet	مبتل	dry	جاف

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>cloud / cloudy</b>	a cloud is a white object that floats in the sky. When there are clouds in the sky, the weather is cloudy	سحابة / ملبد بالسحب
<b>fog / foggy</b>	fog is a very low cloud, when it becomes difficult to see very far. When there is fog, the weather is foggy	غيوم / ملبد بالغيوم
<b>protect</b>	look after, keep safe. Wear a hat to protect your head from the sun	يحمي
<b>railway line</b>	the metal that a train travels on	خط سكة حديد
<b>rain / rainy</b>	rain is water that falls from the sky. When it rains, the weather is rainy	مطر / ممطر
<b>snow / snowy</b>	snow is like cold, soft, white rain and falls from the sky. When it snows, the weather is snowy	جليد / جليدي
<b>wind / windy</b>	wind is the movement of air. When the wind blows, the weather is windy.	رياح / عاصف
<b>storm / stormy</b>	a storm is a very bad weather, with a lot of wind and rain or snow. When there is a storm, the weather is stormy.	عاصفة / عاصف
<b>sun / sunny</b>	The sun is what gives us light. When the sun shines, the weather is sunny	الشمس / مشمس

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do an activity	يقوم بنشاط	leave on	يفادر في ... (تاريخ)
the top of the mountain	أعلى الجبل	return on	يعود في ... (تاريخ)
on the way down	في طريقنا للنزول (لأسفل)	return to	يعود إلى
a bit frightened	خائف قليلاً	protect ... from	يحمي ... من
fall over	يسقط	get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه
sit by the fire	يجلس بالقرب من المدفأة	go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة قصيرة
put on a hat	يرتدي قبعة	made myself breakfast	جهزت وجبة إفطار لنفسي
on time	في الوقت المحدد	get cold	يشعر بالبرد
come out of	يخرج من	across India	عبر الهند



on holiday	في عطلة	This sounds easy	هذا يبدو سهلاً
at the start of the trip	في بداية الرحلة	by ship	عن طريق سفينة
put in the correct order	ضع في الترتيب الصحيح	keep ... warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
It is OK.	الأمر على مايرام	one day earlier	يومًا مبكرًا
ride on a camel	يركب على جمل	cook (meal) on a fire	يطهو (وجبة) على النار
complete the challenge	يكمل التحدي	go around	يتجول
give a great idea for	يعطي فكرة جيدة لـ	in just 80 days	في خلال ثمانون يومًا فقط
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	travel on the sea	يسافر في البحر

## Collocations

## متلازمات لفظية

<b>make</b>	a salad	يجهز السلطة	<b>take</b>	a photo	يأخذ صورة - يصور
	a cup of tea	يجهز كوب من الشاي		a challenge	يخوض تحدي
	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ		the ship back to	يرجع بالسفينة إلى
	breakfast	يجهز الإفطار			

## II

## Reading and Listening



## Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves  
on holiday<sup>(1)</sup> in South Africa<sup>(2)</sup>! It's  
beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure<sup>(3)</sup>. We  
went trekking in the mountains. It was  
sunny<sup>(4)</sup> when we started, but when we  
got to the top of the mountain<sup>(5)</sup>,  
we saw dark clouds<sup>(6)</sup>. On the way down, the rain<sup>(7)</sup> started! Then there  
was a storm<sup>(8)</sup>. The rocks<sup>(9)</sup> were wet and Tamer fell over<sup>(10)</sup> and hurt  
himself. But it's OK \_ his leg is better today.



Tomorrow the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try  
zip lining! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited<sup>(11)</sup>, too.

See you soon,

Dalia

### Check Vocabulary

(1) في أجازة	(2) دولة جنوب أفريقيا	(3) مغامرة	(4) مشمس	(5) قمة الجبل	(6) سحب سوداء / ملبدة بالغيوم
(7) مطر	(8) عاصفة	(9) صخور	(10) سقط	(11) مثار / منفعل	



# Listening

## on Lesson 3 SB page 26

**A Voice a :** It's very sunny<sup>(1)</sup> and there aren't any clouds<sup>(2)</sup> in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.

**Voice b :** There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a storm<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Voice c :** It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot.

**Voice d :** It's very foggy<sup>(4)</sup>. I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) مشمس (2) سحب (3) عاصفة (4) ملبد / ملبىء بالضباب

## on Lesson 3 SB page 27



### B Listen to Nader's presentation

**Nader :** My trip to the desert<sup>(1)</sup>, by Nader.

Last weekend, we went on a trip<sup>(2)</sup> to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast<sup>(3)</sup>. Then I got dressed<sup>(4)</sup>. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror<sup>(5)</sup>. I put on a hat and sunglasses<sup>(6)</sup> to protect<sup>(7)</sup> myself from the sun.

At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold<sup>(8)</sup>, we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm<sup>(9)</sup>.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) الصحراء (2) رحلة قصيرة (3) صنعت إطفاراً لنفسى (4) ارتديت ملابسى (5) نظرت إلى نفسى فى المرأة (6) نظارة شمس (7) يحمى (8) أصبح الجو بارداً (9) نحفظ بالدفء





## Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

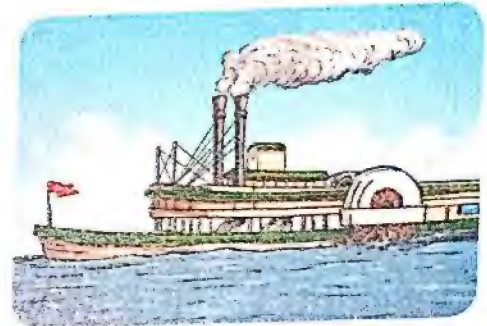
### Around the world in 80 Days by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a **newspaper article**<sup>(1)</sup> about a new **railway line**<sup>(2)</sup> across India. It gave him a **great idea**<sup>(3)</sup> for a book. He wrote a story about a **British**<sup>(4)</sup> man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a **challenge**<sup>(5)</sup> to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

Fogg's plan

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days

Leave on 2<sup>nd</sup> October    Return on 21<sup>st</sup> December



When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big **storm**<sup>(6)</sup> at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22<sup>nd</sup> December. But he **made a mistake**<sup>(7)</sup>: because he travelled **east**<sup>(8)</sup> around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he **completes**<sup>(9)</sup> his challenge on time !

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) مقال في جريدة	(2) خط سكة حديد	(3) فكرة رائعة	(4) بريطاني الجنسية	(5) تحدى
(6) عاصفة	(7) أخطأ	(8) شرقاً	(9) يكمل / ينهى	



# General Notes on Reading and Listening

## 1 by

لاحظ المعاني المختلفة لكلمة (by)

\* by + شخص

بواسطة

- This room was painted by Ali.

\* by + مكان

بالقرب من / بجوار

- He's sitting by the fire.

\* by + وقت

بحلول ذلك الوقت

- By 2025, we will have built a new house.

\* by + وسيلة مواصلات

عن طريق

- We went to Cairo by bus.

## 2 a bit (a little) ≠ much

توضع كلمة (a bit / little) أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة قليلة.

- I'm a bit frightened of dogs.

بينما توضع (much) أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة كبيرة.

- I'm much frightened of dogs.

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Cars, buses, trains and planes are means of .....  
a. population      b. pollution      c. transport      d. fear
- I think it is going to rain. There are a lot of ..... clouds in the sky.  
a. light      b. dark      c. white      d. blue
- I read a lot of information about pollution in a newspaper .....  
a. article      b. note      c. notebook      d. capital
- The Egyptians are designing a ..... line that leads to ..... إلى  
the New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية.  
a. car      b. railway      c. bike      d. motor
- In summer, it is hot and .....  
a. sunny      b. cloudy      c. windy      d. rainy

# Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** After Sami ..... out of the sea, he dried himself with a towel.  
a. made                      b. gave                      c. came                      d. put
2. It is important to ..... on a hat in the desert as it protects you from the sun.  
a. make                      b. put                      c. give                      d. cut
3. Today, it ..... easy to travel around the world in less than 80 days.  
a. tastes                      b. takes                      c. sounds                      d. leaves
4. Sara ..... a mistake when she answered the questions without reading them well.  
a. took                      b. did                      c. made                      d. gave
5. **SB** How long does it ..... to travel from London to Suez ?  
a. make                      b. bake                      c. take                      d. give
6. Which activity are they going to ..... tomorrow ?  
a. make                      b. do                      c. give                      d. return
7. Today, the ..... is sunny but it is so nice.  
a. wind                      b. feather                      c. whether                      d. weather
8. People from Britain are .....  
a. British                      b. Scottish                      c. Swedish                      d. Spanish
9. **SB** On his way down, Tamer ..... over and hurt himself.  
a. took                      b. fell                      c. made                      d. gave
10. **WB** We can't sail because there is no .....  
a. sun                      b. snow                      c. wind                      d. fog
11. You shouldn't drive your car in ..... weather as you don't see well.  
a. sunny                      b. funny                      c. foggy                      d. hot
12. Going trekking in the mountains is a / an ..... It's very dangerous.  
a. fun                      b. adventure                      c. beauty                      d. pleasure
13. **SB** Maya ..... us to speak French.  
a. brought                      b. taught                      c. bought                      d. thought
14. **WB** There is ..... at the top of the mountain. Look! It's white.  
a. air                      b. storm                      c. sun                      d. snow





## Language

## Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

### A We use reflexive pronouns for emphasis :

الضمائر المنعكسة هي ضمائر تعود على فاعل الجملة وتستخدم للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قد قام بعمل الفعل بنفسه وغالباً ما تأتي هذه الضمائر في نهاية الجملة.

ex. I polished the shoes **myself**.

Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس
I أنا	myself بنفسي	You أنت / انت	yourself بنفسك / بنفسك
He هو	himself بنفسه	You أنتم / انتم	yourselves بأنفسكم / بأنفسكم
She هي	herself بنفسها	We نحن	ourselves بأنفسنا
It هو/هي لغير العاقل	itself بنفسه/بنفسها لغير العاقل	They هم/هن	themselves بأنفسهم / بأنفسهن

- ex. - She taught **herself** to speak German.  
- We must cook the food **ourselves**.

### B When the object is the same as the subject of the verb, we use the reflexive pronouns.

عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه الفاعل في الجملة تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة.

- ex. - Amir will hurt **himself**.  
- She saw **herself** in the mirror.

◀ **نلاحظ أن** في الجملة الأمرية إذا كان المخاطب مفرد نستخدم (yourself) وإذا كان جمع (yourselves)

ex. Spend a few minutes preparing **yourself / yourselves** for exercise.

◀ يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة».

**by myself = on my own = alone = without any help**

- ex. - I went shopping **on my own** (alone).  
- He lives **on his own** (alone / by himself).  
- Did Ali paint that picture **on his own** (without any help) ?

يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر مثل after / for / on :

ex. - The girls looked **after themselves**.

- Always depend **on yourself**.

ولكن لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة مع حروف جر مثل (with) وتستخدم ضمائر المفعول بدلاً منها :

ex. - Bring your jacket with you. (Not : with yourself)

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة :

ex. - Enjoy yourself = استمتع بوقتك

- Take care of yourself = اعتنى بنفسك

- Help yourself (to) = ساعد نفسك / تفضل

- Make yourself at home = تصرف وكأنك في منزلك

- Behave yourself = تصرف بأدب / تأدب

## Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** We enjoyed ..... when we went sailing.

- a. himself                      b. themselves                      c. ourselves                      d. myself

2. **SB** Sami came out of the sea and dried ..... with a towel.

- a. herself                                      b. himself  
c. ourselves                                      d. themselves

3. **SB** I made ..... some salad for lunch.

- a. himself                      b. itself                      c. herself                      d. myself

4. **SB** Would you like to make ..... a cup of tea ?

- a. yourself                      b. himself                      c. herself                      d. itself

5. You don't have to drive this car. It drives .....

- a. herself                      b. itself                      c. yourself                      d. myself

6. The teacher told the students to behave .....

- a. ourselves                      b. themselves                      c. yourself                      d. yourselves

7. She taught ..... to speak English.

- a. himself                      b. herself                      c. themselves                      d. itself



8. Did you hurt ..... ?  
 a. yourself                      b. himself                      c. herself                      d. myself
9. I cleaned the kitchen ..... myself.  
 a. on                      b. in                      c. about                      d. by
10. **WB** Sara has a jacket to keep ..... warm.  
 a. himself                      b. themselves                      c. herself                      d. yourself
11. **WB** The birds sleep in caves to protect ..... from eagles.  
 a. herself                      b. itself                      c. yourselves                      d. themselves

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** I made himself a cup of tea. ( ..... )
2. A cat doesn't need a shower. It cleans herself. ( ..... )
3. Mona drew himself a picture. ( ..... )
4. Ahmed bought themselves a cold drink. ( ..... )

### IV

## Speaking corner

### Describing the weather

### وصف حالة الطقس

#### Questions ?

- What is the weather like now ?  
كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم ؟
- How is the weather now ?  
كيف كان الطقس بالأمس ؟
- How was the weather yesterday ?  
كيف سيكون الطقس غدًا ؟

#### Answers ✓

- There is fog, the weather is foggy.

يوجد ضباب، الطقس ضبابي.

- The weather was sunny.

كان الطقس مشمسًا.

- The weather will be windy tomorrow.

سيكون الطقس عاصف غدًا.

## Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

## «A holiday in South Africa»

1. Last month, I saw some beautiful photos about South Africa on facebook. ١. الشهر الماضي، رأيت بعض الصور الجميلة عن جنوب أفريقيا على صفحة الفيسبوك.
2. I went to South Africa by plane. ٢. ذهبت إلى جنوب أفريقيا بالطائرة.
3. I had a nice time there. ٣. قضيت وقتاً رائعاً هناك.
4. On Saturday, I went trekking in the mountains. ٤. في يوم السبت، ذهبت للتجسس في الجبال.
5. The weather was sunny. ٥. كان الطقس مشمساً.
6. On Sunday, I got to the top of the mountain. ٦. يوم الأحد، صعدت إلى قمة الجبل.
7. I saw dark clouds at the top of the mountain. ٧. رأيت سحب ملبدة بالغيوم على قمة الجبل.
8. There was a big storm, but it finished. ٨. كان هناك عاصفة قوية ولكنها انتهت.
9. I tried zip lining, it was exciting. ٩. ذهبت لتجربة رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال وكانت تجربة رائعة.

## احرص على إقتناء



اسم يعنى التفوق

المكان

في اللغة الإنجليزية  
للف الأول الإعدادي

المراجعة النهائية  
ونماذج الامتحانات



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. When did you go trekking in the mountains ?  
a. Yesterday      b. Today      c. Last week      d. Last month
2. What was the weather like when you started ?  
a. Cloudy      b. Rainy      c. Sunny      d. Snowy
3. Did you go to the top ?  
a. Yes, we did      b. No, we didn't  
c. Not in the text      d. I don't know
4. What did you see at the top ?  
a. Rain      b. The sun      c. Dark clouds      d. A plane

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I read a/an ..... in the newspaper about modern inventions.  
a. novel      b. article      c. adverb      d. app
2. My friends say that climbing the mountain is not safe, but I decided to take the .....  
a. challenge      b. change      c. trip      d. top
3. My sister ..... her leg and she couldn't walk.  
a. heard      b. mended      c. hurt      d. cleaned
4. The ground was very ..... after the rain yesterday.  
a. windy      b. wet      c. dry      d. high
5. When there's ..... , we see ice on the ground.  
a. sun      b. storm      c. snow      d. rain
6. Try zip ....., but don't feel frightened.  
a. lining      b. climbing      c. trekking      d. riding
7. Who ..... your breakfast ? - I ..... it myself.  
a. dried      b. made      c. hurt      d. started







I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

circle (d) (v) (n)

يضع دائرة / دائرة



letter (n)

خطاب



basketball (n) كرة السلة



beach (n)

شاطئ



grandad (n)

الجد



swimming (n) السباحة



station (n)

محطة



album (n)

ألبوم



magazine (n)

مجلة



friends (n)

أصدقاء

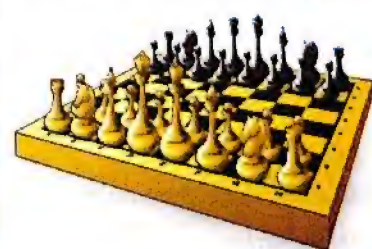


email (n) بريد إلكتروني



chess (n)

شطرنج





## Key Vocabulary

important (adj)	مهم	introduction (n)	مقدمة
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	opinion (n)	رأى

## Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 88

prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	hobby (n)	هواية
both	كلا من	tomorrow (adv)	غدا
respond (ed) (v) (n)	يرد - رد	underline (d) , (v)	يضع خطاً تحت
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

## Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 89

dear (adj)	عزيز / غال	idea (n)	فكرة
excited (adj)	متحمس	ending (n)	نهاية
visit (ed) (v) , (n)	يزور - زيارة	advantages (n)	مزايا / مميزات
cousins (n)	أولاد العم / الخال	online (adv), (adj)	متصل بالإنترنت
photo album	ألبوم الصور	tennis lessons (n)	دروس فى التنس
reply (ied) (v) , (n)	يرد - رد		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
draw يرسم	drew	drawn
meet يقابل	met	met
fight يحارب / يتشاجر	fought	fought
hit يضرب	hit	hit
find يجد	found	found
buy يشتري	bought	bought

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

challenge a difficult task or problem

تحدى



## Important expressions & prepositions

forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	respond to suggestions	يرد على الاقتراحات
different forms	أشكال مختلفة	reply to	رد لـ
the most dangerous	الأكثر خطورة	I'm really excited	أنا متحمس للغاية
good idea!	فكرة جيدة !	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
good at	جيد في	lots of	كثير من
give a presentation	يقدم عرض	stay with	يبقى مع
a bit scary	مخيف قليلاً	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
I'd rather + inf. ....	أنا أفضل ..... لا أعرف.	have tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس في التنس
I don't know.	لا أعرف.	would like .....	يفضل / بود.....
How about ..... ?	ماذا عن - ما رأيك في .....	write to me soon	راسلني لاحقاً
respect other people's opinions	يحترم آراء الآخرين	end an email	ينهى رسالة بريد إلكتروني
do sport	يمارس رياضة	See you soon !	أراك لاحقاً ! / قريباً
put in order	يرتب	plan for ...	يخطط لـ

## II

## Reading and Listening



## Listening

### on Lesson 5 SB page 29

**Ola** : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being **by the sea**<sup>(1)</sup>.  
What shall we do this afternoon ?

**Lamia** : Why don't we go swimming ?

**Ola** : I'm not sure. Swimming is **fun**<sup>(2)</sup>,  
but we can do that at home.  
**I'd rather**<sup>(3)</sup> do something more exciting.



### Check Vocabulary

بجوار البحر (1)

متعة (2)

أنا أفضل (3)



**Lamia** : OK. How about going windsurfing ?

**Ola** : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing ... and it isn't very windy today.

**Lamia** : OK, not swimming and nor windsurfing ... I know! Let's go kayaking.

**Ola** : Good idea! I love kayaking.



## Videoscript

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey<sup>(1)</sup> ... athletics<sup>(2)</sup> ... and archery<sup>(3)</sup>. But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt?<sup>(4)</sup> Very old drawings and paintings<sup>(5)</sup> show people playing a lot of different sports.

This picture in the Temple of Ramses II shows people fencing with sticks<sup>(6)</sup>. In fencing today, two people fight each other with swords<sup>(7)</sup>.

The Ancient Egyptians also liked running. During the time of King Taharka, there was a race<sup>(8)</sup> of 100 kilometres. People believe that this was a test<sup>(9)</sup> so that the king could find his best soldiers<sup>(10)</sup>. Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic<sup>(11)</sup> Race. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara pyramid and finishes in Saqqara. Running is very popular<sup>(12)</sup> today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy<sup>(13)</sup>.

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket<sup>(14)</sup> you hit the ball with.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you ?

### Check Vocabulary

(1) لعبة الهوكي	(2) ألعاب القوى	(3) لعبة الرماية	(4) مصر القديمة	(5) لوحات / رسومات
(6) المباراة بالعصى	(7) سيوف	(8) سباق	(9) اختبار	(10) جنود
(11) فرعونى	(12) مشهور / شائع	(13) يحافظ على صحته	(14) مضرب التنس	



## Reading

### on Lesson 6 WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the famous library. I'm very excited about that. It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd august. I'm going to have tennis lessons!

I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!

Let's do some things together before we go back to school.

What about going to the beach? You always like swimming.

Write to me soon so I know your plans!

From Judy

### on Lesson 6 SB Page 30

☐ New message

From : Maher

To : Karim

Subject : Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really **excited**<sup>(1)</sup> that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm **looking forward to**<sup>(2)</sup> seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the **station**<sup>(3)</sup>.

Our new home is **by the beach**<sup>(4)</sup>. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?

On Thursday, **Grandad**<sup>(5)</sup> is going to visit us. Let's make him a **special present**<sup>(6)</sup>. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a **photo album**<sup>(7)</sup>. See you on Saturday !

From

Maher



### Check Vocabulary

(1) متفعل / منفعّل (2) يتطلع إلى (3) محطة (4) بجوار الشاطئ (5) جد (6) هدية مميزة (7) اليوم صور فوتوغرافية

## General Notes on Reading and Listening

يتطلع إلى

### ► Look forward to + noun اسم / (inf. + ing)

- I'm looking forward to visiting Aswan.
- We're looking forward to the summer vacation.

• لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية مع الفعل "make".

make

- notes
- suggestions
- a sentence
- a special present for
- a photo album
- a presentation

يدون ملاحظات

يقدم اقتراحات

يكون جملة

يصنع هدية خاصة لـ

يصنع ألبوم صور

يجهز عرض

• لاحظ التراكيب اللغوية الآتية للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

### Making Suggestions

هيا بنا

#### 1. Let's + inf.

- Let's play tennis.

ما رأيك / (وماذا عن) ..... ؟

#### 2. How / What about + (inf. + ing) .... ?

- How / what about playing basketball ?

لما لا ...

#### 3. Why don't we + inf. المصدر ..... ?

- Why don't we go windsurfing ?

هيا بنا .. ؟ / هلا فعلنا ..... ؟

#### 4. Shall we + inf. المصدر ..... ?

- Shall we go diving ?

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is a team sport.

a. Basketball

b. Squash

c. Karate

d. Athletics

2. I collected all my family photos and put them in a/an .....

a. quiz

b. album

c. book

d. basket

3. I love food very much, so I always read ..... about food.

a. offices

b. kitchens

c. magazines

d. screens



4. When I travel to Alexandria, I sit by the ..... I love the sea.  
 a. street                      b. road                      c. sand                      d. beach

## Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We learned to ..... older people. It's polite to do.  
 a. destroy                      b. delete                      c. respect                      d. carry
2. How ..... eating lunch at a restaurant ? - Good idea !  
 a. for                      b. on                      c. about                      d. off
3. There are many ..... of transport nowadays.  
 a. forms                      b. frames                      c. farms                      d. farmers
4. Our science teacher ..... some suggestions about our trip to the Science Museum.  
 a. took                      b. gave                      c. made                      d. did
5. I'm ..... forward to seeing my uncle before travelling.  
 a. making                      b. taking                      c. looking                      d. doing
6. We usually start the email with the word .....  
 a. Dare                      b. Dear                      c. Deer                      d. Dart
7. He thinks that rock climbing is a bit scary. She'd rather ..... another sport.  
 a. make                      b. do                      c. give                      d. share
8. When your friend sends you an email, you should write him a/an .....  
 a. lesson                      b. invitation                      c. question                      d. reply
9. **WB** Always check your final email for any ..... in spelling or grammar.  
 a. plans                      b. mistakes                      c. words                      d. lessons
10. One of the ..... of the underground is that it is cheap, clean and fast.  
 a. advantages                      b. presentations                      c. introductions                      d. stations
11. You can plan your presentation on the computer or ..... notes.  
 a. have                      b. make                      c. give                      d. do
12. **SB** Maher wants to make a ..... present for his grandad.  
 a. special                      b. private                      c. general                      d. public

## IV

## Speaking corner

## ① Making and responding to suggestions :

١. تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها

1

## Situation

الموقف

- Why don't we go swimming ?  
لما لا نذهب للسباحة ؟
- How about meeting next weekend ?  
ما رأيك أن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟
- What about watching TV ?  
ما رأيك في مشاهدة التلفزيون ؟
- Shall we have a picnic ?
- Shall we go rock climbing ?  
- ما رأيك أن نذهب في نزهة ؟  
- ما رأيك بأن نتسلق الصخور ؟
- We could have a game of football.  
من الممكن أن نلعب مباراة كرة قدم.
- Let's go to the Public Library to read some books.  
هيا بنا نذهب للمكتبة العامة لقراءة بعض الكتب.
- Let's go shopping.  
هيا بنا نذهب للتسوق.
- I suggest going to the museum.  
أنا أقترح أن نذهب للمتحف.

2

## Positive response

الرد بالموافقة

- That's a good idea.  
إنها فكرة جيدة.
- Great idea.  
فكرة عظيمة.
- OK, why not ?  
وهو كذلك ولم لا ؟
- Yes, let's do so.  
نعم، هيا نفعل هذا.
- OK.
- That's a good idea.  
موافق.
- I agree.  
إنها فكرة جيدة.
- Great idea.  
فكرة عظيمة.
- I agree.  
أنا موافق.

3

## Negative response

الرد بالرفض

- No, thanks.  
لا، شكرًا.
- I don't really feel like it.  
أنا حقاً لا أحب هذا.
- I'm not very keen on that.  
لست متحمساً لذلك.
- Maybe some other time.
- I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary  
ربما في وقت آخر.  
أنا غير متأكد هذا يبدو مخيفاً قليلاً
- That's not possible.
- I'd rather (go to the beach)  
هذا ليس ممكناً.  
أنا أفضل الذهاب للشاطئ.
- I'd prefer to (go to the beach).
- أنا أفضل (الذهاب للشاطئ).
- Sorry, I'm busy.  
أسف، أنا مشغول.
- I disagree.  
أنا غير موافق.



## 2 Talking about your plan for the holiday الحديث عن خطتك للأجازة

1. On ..... أيام الأسبوع (شخص) (is / are / am) going to ..... رياضة / هواية
2. On ..... أيام الأسبوع (شخص) (am not / isn't / aren't) going to ..... رياضة / هواية
3. .... (شخص) (am / is / are) good at ..... رياضة / هواية
4. It's going to be a ..... (صفة) adventure.
5. From ..... (تاريخ) to ..... (تاريخ) (شخص) am / is / are going to ..... رياضة / هواية
6. I like ..... رياضة / هواية
7. .... (شخص) am / is / are going to stay at / in ..... (مكان)
8. .... (شخص) can ..... رياضة / هواية
9. .... (شخص) am / is / are looking forward to ..... (inf. + ing)
10. The journey is going to take ..... (وقت)

## Exercise on Speaking Corner

### Complete the following dialogue :

A : Hi Ahmed! What shall we do tomorrow ?

B : Shall we (1) ..... rock climbing ?

A : I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary. I'd rather do another sport.

B : I like doing sports, too. How (2) ..... playing basketball ?

A : I don't know. I'm not very good (3) ..... basketball.

B : I know ! (4) ..... play tennis. We're both good at it.

A : Good idea !

B : (5) ..... will we meet ?

A : At nine o'clock.

B : Ok.

## Writing

## Stop here!

الجملة الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

## وسائل المواصلات «Forms of transport»

1. We have different forms of transport today.

١. لدينا وسائل مختلفة من المواصلات اليوم.

2. There are some forms of transport that are also hobbies.

٢. هناك بعض وسائل المواصلات التي تعتبر هوايات أيضًا.

3. The fastest form of transport is the plane.

٣. الطائرات من أكثر وسائل المواصلات سرعة.

4. Some people prefer certain forms of transport.

٤. بعض الأشخاص يفضلون وسائل مواصلات معينة.

## Writing tips

Remember to use joining words to connect ideas.

تذكر أن تستخدم مفردات لربط الأفكار.

- I can't play tennis now, I'm going to be very good after the lessons !

- Write to me soon. I know your plans !

## Remember

تذكر

- E-mails usually start with Dear (name).

تبدأ عادة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني بكلمة **Dear** (اسم).

- E-mails to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you soon"

تنتهي عادة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني بتعبيرات مثل "أراك قريبًا".



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Who is looking forward to seeing Karim ? - .....  
a. Samy                      b. Maher                      c. Karim's sister                      d. Sawsan
2. Karim is coming from .....  
a. Cairo                      b. Alexandria                      c. Aswan                      d. Luxor
3. When is Karim coming ? - .....  
a. Next Saturday                      b. Today                      c. Tomorrow                      d. Next year
4. How is Karim coming ? - By .....  
a. train                      b. bus                      c. plane                      d. boat

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Salem : What shall we do tomorrow ?

Ameer : Let's (1) ..... a sport.

Salem : Are you good at playing basketball ?

Ameer : Yes, (2) ..... Do you like playing it ?

Salem : (3) ..... I'm not tall.

Ameer : Don't worry. I'm not tall, either. But I practise it daily.

Salem : (4) ..... do you practise it ?

Ameer : At school and in the club.

Salem : (5) ..... do you practise it ?

Ameer : Every day.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** Shall we ..... rock climbing ?  
a. going                      b. go                      c. went                      d. to go
2. .... going to the park ?  
a. Shall we                      b. Let's                      c. How about                      d. Can we

3. **WB** The children put on hats to protect ..... from the sun.  
 a. itself                      b. himself                      c. herself                      d. themselves
4. After reading the story, I ..... some notes.  
 a. made                      b. did                      c. bought                      d. sold
5. I felt ..... when I saw my team winning the match.  
 a. excited                      b. afraid                      c. warm                      d. frightened
6. Write a/an ..... at the beginning of your email.  
 a. passage                      b. text                      c. conclusion                      d. introduction
7. A : What's your ..... about the journey ? B : Wonderful !  
 a. suggestion                      b. opinion                      c. hobby                      d. expression
8. My favourite ..... is reading. I like it so much.  
 a. activity                      b. study                      c. hobby                      d. trip
9. Egypt has many ..... of transport.  
 a. farms                      b. forms                      c. objects                      d. subjects
10. I'd rather ..... sports on holidays.  
 a. make                      b. take                      c. do                      d. send

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Let's spending good time together. ( ..... )
2. **SB** I'm looking forward to see you. ( ..... )
3. **WB** I'd prefer playing tennis. ( ..... )
4. She is tall and very good in basketball. ( ..... )

احرص على إقتناء







## 1. Vocabulary

diving	رياضة الغطس	water sport	رياضة مائية
kayaking	التجديف بالزورق	mountain sport	رياضة جبلية
trekking	رياضة السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة	Bedouin	بدوى - بدو
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	adventure	مغامرة
zip lining	الإنزلاق بالحبال	equipment	معدات
sailing	الإبحار (بالمركب)	argument	مناقشة / جدال
tent	خيمة	sunny	مشمس
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات الجبلية	foggy	ملى بالضباب
suggestion	اقتراح	newspaper article	مقال فى جريدة

## 2. Language

### 1. Future with (be + going to) :

#### Affirmative statements

Subj. + be + going to +  
inf. المصدر

I	am	going to	cook. see. clean.
He She It	is		
You We They	are		look. work.

#### Questions

1

Am  
Is  
Are + subj. + going to  
+ inf. .... ?

Is she going to try rock climbing ?

2 Wh word + be + subj. +  
going to + inf. المصدر ?

- Where are you going to study ?

- What is he going to do tonight ?

#### Negative statements

Subj. + be + not + going to +  
inf. المصدر

I	am not	going to	cook.
He	is not		see.
She It			clean.
You We They	are not		look. work.

## ٢. الضمائر المنعكسة

## 2. Reflexive pronouns :

\* عندما يكون المفعول والفاعل نفس الشخص نستخدم الضمير المنعكس.

myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves

- Amir will hurt **himself**.
- Did you look at **yourself** in the mirror ?

\* أحياناً نستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قام بالفعل بنفسه وغالباً ما يأتى فى نهاية الجملة.

- Nobody helped me do the work. I did it **myself**.

## 3. Speaking

## \* Making suggestions :

لتقديم اقتراح نستخدم الصيغ الآتية :

Suggestions	Examples
• Let's + inf. <b>المصدر</b>	- Let's play tennis.
• How / What about + inf. + ing ... ?	- How about going to the park ?
• What shall we + inf... ?	- What shall we do tomorrow ?
• Shall we + inf. ... ?	- Shall we go rock climbing ?

- Good idea.

\* للرد بالموافقة :

- I don't feel like it.

\* للرد بعدم الموافقة :

## 4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

## Model Paragraph

## "My trekking adventure"

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.



## 5. Writing Skill



### Study

\* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics	Helpful Expressions
الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) My favourite sport	- I'm in (مكان) with my family.
(2) A trip to the desert	- I would like to (مصدر الفعل).
(3) An adventure sport	- We are going to try (لعبة رياضية).
(4) A holiday with my family	- The weather is (حالة الجو).
	- I'm (صفة).
	- We're enjoying ourselves on holiday in (مكان).
	- We are going to visit (مكان).
	- The journey is going to start/finish in (وقت).
	- We are going to sleep in (مكان).



### Try

\* استخدم التعبيرات السابقة لتكون جملة على كل كلمة :

The Word	Try to make a sentence
- windsurfing	We're going to try windsurfing.
- tent	.....
- Sinai	.....
- sunny	.....
- rock climbing	.....



### Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words of :

"Your favourite sport"

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Test on unit 9



تنويه

يمكنك حل  
الاختبار إلكترونياً  
وتصويبه

## A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We're on holiday in .....  
a. Africa                      b. South Africa                      c. North Africa                      d. India
- The weather is going to be better .....  
a. tomorrow                      b. today                      c. next                      d. Before
- Is there a lot to do ?  
a. Yes, there's                      b. No, there isn't  
c. Not in the text                      d. I don't know
- Yesterday was .....  
a. foggy                      b. an adventure                      c. terrible                      d. sunny

## B. Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem tells Amr about his journey.

Amr : I haven't seen you for ten days. Were you on a journey ?

Kareem : Yes, I (1) ..... in Dahab.

Amr : Did you go alone ?

Kareem : No, I went (2) ..... my friends.

Amr : (3) ..... did you stay there ?

Kareem : For a week.

Amr : Did you try rock climbing ?

Kareem : No, because it was (4) .....

Amr : How did you (5) ..... from one place to another ?

Kareem : On a camel.

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm **looking forward to** seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the station.



Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?

On Thursday, grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday !

From

Maher

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is this email about ?

.....

2. Where's Maher's new home ?

.....

3. Do you think Maher's grandad would be happy with the photo album ? Why ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined expression "look forward to" means .....

- a. watch      b. hope      c. like      d. worry

5. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to .....

- a. Maher      b. Karim      c. grandad      d. cousin

6. Karim and Maher can go .....

- a. swimming      b. windsurfing      c. diving      d. a,b & c

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To walk a long distance, usually over land is called .....

- a. surfing      b. kayaking      c. trekking      d. zip lining

2. Travelling through the desert is a great ..... I like it a lot.

- a. fear      b. adventure      c. surfing      d. kayaking

3. What about ..... lining ? - It's dangerous.

- a. rock      b. wind      c. zip      d. rope

4. During trekking adventure, you need a ..... to help you find the way.  
 a. tourist                      b. rider                      c. guide                      d. driver
5. When you have a ....., this means that you know how to do something.  
 a. subject                      b. skill                      c. plan                      d. sport
6. When you go diving, you should have some ..... to keep you safe.  
 a. equipment                      b. subject                      c. argument                      d. kind
7. After coming out of the sea, I dried myself with a .....  
 a. down                      b. pool                      c. tool                      d. towel
8. Heba and Ramzy are really enjoying .....  
 a. himself                      b. herself                      c. yourselves                      d. themselves
9. **SB** I ..... try rock climbing tomorrow.  
 a. 'll go                      b. 'm go to                      c. 'm going                      d. 'm going to
10. **WB** What ..... learn ?  
 a. is going                      b. she is going to  
 c. is going to                      d. is she going to

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** What shall we doing tomorrow ? ( ..... )
2. Would you like to make you a cup of tea ? ( ..... )
3. **WB** I made this cake me. ( ..... )
4. Maged's father is going flying abroad. ( ..... )

### E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

معجب عند في نهاية الكتاب

“An adventure”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Review



SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92



## Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Hi Dareen

• How are you ? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour<sup>(1)</sup> Bridge<sup>(2)</sup>. It was very high and scary<sup>(3)</sup>. But the views<sup>(4)</sup> from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie<sup>(5)</sup> of ourselves !

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music<sup>(6)</sup>! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake<sup>(7)</sup> and go rock climbing<sup>(8)</sup>. Here are some photos !

Love, Amy

Hi Amy

Your holiday sounds fantastic<sup>(9)</sup>. My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing<sup>(10)</sup> and kayaking<sup>(11)</sup>. I love water sports<sup>(12)</sup> ! ..

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen



### Check Vocabulary

(1) ميناء	(2) كوبرى	(3) مخيف	(4) مناظر طبيعية	(5) صورة شخصية بالكاميرا الأمامية
(6) موسيقى كلاسيكية	(7) بحيرة	(8) تسلق الصخور	(9) تبدو رائعة	
(10) رياضة ركوب الأمواج	(11) رياضة التجديف بالزورق	(12) رياضات مائية		





# Listening

Lesson 2 SB page 33

**Woman :** Egypt is just over one million square kilometres<sup>(1)</sup>

**Man :** Australia is the sixth largest country<sup>(2)</sup> in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.



**Woman :** The highest mountain<sup>(3)</sup> in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

**Man :** The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

**Woman :** The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through<sup>(4)</sup> Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.

**Man :** The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles<sup>(5)</sup>!

**Woman :** In Egypt, the tallest building<sup>(6)</sup> is the Cairo Tower. It is one hundred and eighty-seven metres tall.

**Man :** The tallest building in Australia is the Q1 building in Surfer's Paradise and it is three hundred and twenty-two metres tall.

## Check Vocabulary

(1) كيلومترات مربعة (2) دولة (3) جبل (4) يتدفق خلال (5) تماسيح (6) مبنى





## Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 91 .

• Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe **Island**<sup>(1)</sup>. The **author**<sup>(2)</sup> of *Robinson Crusoe*, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a **real**<sup>(3)</sup> **sailor**<sup>(4)</sup> called Alexander Selkirk **spent**<sup>(5)</sup> four years alone here. Defoe wrote *Robinson Crusoe* after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's **adventures**<sup>(6)</sup> were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to **look after**<sup>(7)</sup> themselves. The **nearest**<sup>(8)</sup> land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!



### Check Vocabulary

(1) جزيرة (2) مؤلف (3) حقيقى (4) بحار (5) قضى (6) مغامرات (7) يعتنى بـ (8) الأقرب

## Time Saving

### Plan B

طريقة أخرى جديدة للشرح (اختيارية للمعلم)

Quick Look لدراسة المنهج فى ملحق

لضمان الإلمام بالمنهج بطريقة تتماشى مع الفترة الزمنية

للتزم الثانى بشكل يضمن اكتساب جميع المهارات المطلوبة.





# Listening

Lesson 1 WB page 91

1

Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend ?

Lara : Oh, it was **terrible**<sup>(1)</sup>.

Girl : Oh dear, what happened ?

Lara : I went to the museum, but it was **closed**<sup>(2)</sup> Then I **missed the bus**<sup>(3)</sup> so I had to walk home.

Girl : **Oh dear !**<sup>(4)</sup>

2

Boy 1 : I love tennis. Do you **agree**<sup>(5)</sup> that it's more exciting than any other sport ?

Boy 2 : **I'm afraid**<sup>(6)</sup> I don't agree.

3

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama ?

Girl 2 : Why don't go swimming ?

Girl 1 : I'm not sure. The **swimming pool**<sup>(7)</sup> is not very near.

Girl 2 : OK. How about going to the park ?

Girl 1 : **Good idea !**<sup>(8)</sup> I love the trees and plants there.

4

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading ?

Boy 4 : I think it's **the worst**<sup>(9)</sup> book ever !

## Check Vocabulary

(1) فظيع / رهيب	(2) مغلق	(3) يفوته الأتوبيس	(4) يا للأسف	(5) يوافق
(6) أخشى أن	(7) حمام سباحة	(8) فكرة جيدة	(9) الأسوأ	





# General Revision

Based on Units

7, 8 & 9

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٧، ٨، ٩

## مراجعة عامة على Unit 7 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
<p>aquarium متحف الأحياء المائية</p> <p>sports centre مركز رياضي</p> <p>funfair مدينة الملاهي</p> <p>planetarium مرصد فلكي</p> <p>football stadium ستاد كرة قدم</p> <p>bowling alley محالة لعبة البولينج</p> <p>nervous عصبي / متوتر</p> <p>canteen مقصف (كافيتين)</p> <p>exhibition معرض / عرض</p> <p>jungle أدغال (غابة كثيفة)</p> <p>musician موسيقار</p> <p>trumpet آلة البوق</p> <p>cave كهف</p> <p>interview مقابلة رسمية</p> <p>interviewer محاور</p> <p>traditional تقليدي</p> <p>adventure مغامرة</p> <p>sailor بحار</p> <p>concert حفل موسيقي</p> <p>olives زيتون</p> <p>peppers فلفل</p> <p>barbecue حفل شواء</p>	<p><b>1- Past time expressions</b></p> <p>التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div> <p>السنة الماضية year</p> <p>الشهر الماضي month</p> <p>الأسبوع الماضي week</p> <p>الثلاثاء الماضي Tuesday</p> </div> <div> <p>(last)</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div> <p>في الماضي أمس</p> <p>في هذا الصباح هذا الصباح (١٩٩٩)</p> <p>في عام (1999) في شهر (أكتوبر)</p> <p>in the past yesterday</p> <p>this morning in (October)</p> </div> <div> <p>منذ ساعة an hour</p> <p>منذ ثلاثة أيام three days</p> <p>منذ ستة شهور six months</p> <p>منذ أربع سنوات four years</p> </div> </div> <p>• تستخدم هذه التعبيرات للدلالة على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهى.</p> <p>- Salma bought a new bag last year.</p> <p><b>2- Yes/No questions</b></p> <p>السئلة التي تبدأ بـ Yes / No</p> <p>Did you go to the zoo ?</p> <p>- Yes, I did.</p> <p>- No, I didn't.</p> <p>Are you happy ?</p> <p>- Yes, I am.</p> <p>- No, I am not.</p> <p><b>3- Wh-questions</b></p> <p>السئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام</p> <p>What did you do yesterday ?</p> <p>When are you going to the cinema ?</p>	<p>1. Talking about your weekend :</p> <p>الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك</p> <p>- When did you go to the funfair ?</p> <p>I went to the funfair last Sunday.</p> <p>2. Discussing types of music :</p> <p>الحديث عن أنواع الموسيقى</p> <p>- What type of music do you like ?</p> <p>I like jazz but I don't like opera.</p>



## مراجعة عامة على Unit 8 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
suspension bridge tower tunnel desert road forest crowded the countryside population sunset ice skating view achievements proud opinion glass floor museum entrance treasure historical column statue	<p><b>1- Comparative adjectives :</b> المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة معينة</p> <p>صفة قصيرة + er + than - A dog is bigger than a cat. more/less + صفة طويلة + than - English is more interesting than history.</p> <p><b>2- Superlative adjectives :</b> المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين في صفة</p> <p>the + صفة قصيرة + est The elephant is the biggest land animal. the most / least + صفة طويلة This T-shirt is the most expensive one in the shop.</p>	<p>1. Talking about measurements الحديث عن القياسات</p> <p>- How long is the Cairo - Alexandria desert Road ? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوي ؟</p> <p>- It's 220 km long.</p> <p>2. Talking about comparatives : الحديث عن المقارنات بين اثنين.</p> <p>- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid ? - I think the Great Pyramid is taller.</p> <p>3. Asking for &amp; giving opinions. السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء.</p> <p>- What's your opinion about the film ? - Do you agree that the match is boring ? - I agree. / I don't agree.</p>



## مراجعة عامة على Unit 9 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
diving	رياضة الغطس	1. Describing the weather : وصف الطقس
kayaking	التجديف بالزورق	- What's the weather like today ?
mountain biking	رياضة ركوب دراجات الجبال	- It's sunny / rainy / windy / hot ... etc.
sailing	رياضة الإبحار	2. Discussing activities and travel plans : الحديث عن الأنشطة وخطط السفر
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	- What shall we do this weekend ?
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبال	- Let's play tennis.
trekking	رحلة طويلة شاقة (غالباً سيراً على الأقدام)	- What about going windsurfing ?
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء	- Good idea ! عند الرد نستخدم.
tent	خيمة	- OK, why not ? وهو كذلك / ولم لا ؟
water sport	رياضة مائية	
mountain sport	رياضة جبلية	
rainy	ممطر	
sunny	مشمس	
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	
windy	عاصف	
foggy	ضبابي	
railway line	خط سكة حديد	
challenge	تحدي	
journey	رحلة طويلة	



## General Exercises on Units 7, 8 & 9

**السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان :** يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع من حوال ٢٥ كلمة ويجب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Dina's birthday was last ..... .  
 a. Sunday                      b. Saturday                      c. Tuesday                      d. Monday
2. They went to the ..... .  
 a. citadel                      b. library                      c. museum                      d. tower
3. They saw some ..... statues.  
 a. ancient                      b. modern                      c. new                      d. big
4. .... went to the museum.  
 a. Mum                      b. Sister                      c. Dina                      d. a , b and c

**السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان :** يكمل الطالب محادثة بها خمس فراغات.

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar : Hello ! Hamdi.

Hamdi : Hi ! Omar.

Omar : (1) ..... shall we do on Saturday ?

Hamdi : Why don't we go rock (2) ..... ?

Omar : I'm not sure. It's quite (3) ..... I'd rather do a different activity.

Hamdi : OK. How about (4) ..... basketball ?

Omar : I don't know. I'm not very tall.

Hamdi : OK, you don't agree on rock climbing or basketball !  
 Let's play (5) .....

Omar : Good idea ! I always enjoy playing tennis.

Hamdi : OK. See you.



**السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان :** عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

**3 Read the following, then answer the question :**

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island.

18<sup>th</sup> December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone. This afternoon I found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish !

19<sup>th</sup> December

I found a coconut on the beach today. It was **delicious**. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave. I want a warm place to sleep. I walked through a jungle and there were some rocks, but no caves.

20<sup>th</sup> December

I found a cave !

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

.....

2. Where did Crusoe stay ?

.....

3. Do you think Crusoe was brave ? Why ?

.....



**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. When something is **delicious**, you ..... .  
 a. become afraid of it                      b. don't like it  
 c. don't need it                                d. enjoy eating it
5. "Robinson Crusoe" is an ..... story.  
 a. romance                      b. crime                      c. adventure                      d. comedy
6. Crusoe wrote a ..... of what happened to him.  
 a. novel                      b. dairy                      c. diary                      d. book

**السؤال الرابع فى ورقة الامتحان :** يختار الطالب الإجابة الصحيحة من ١٠ جمل (٧ جمل مفردات لغوية + ٣ جمل قواعد لغوية) بها أربع خيارات لكل جملة.

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He likes writing every thing happens in his ..... .  
 a. diary                      b. dairy                      c. daily                      d. date
2. You can know a lot about the sky and its stars in the ..... .  
 a. planetarium                      b. aquarium                      c. stadium                      d. funfair
3. He is a polite person who ..... others' opinions.  
 a. hates                      b. teaches                      c. respects                      d. makes
4. Travelling on the coast ..... is wonderful. You can enjoy the sea, too.  
 a. way                      b. street                      c. land                      d. road
5. We moved our chair to make more ..... for us to move.  
 a. building                      b. design                      c. opening                      d. space
6. I asked a ..... to tell me the best places to visit.  
 a. control                      b. guide                      c. host                      d. captain
7. The channel ..... goes under the sea between England and France.  
 a. Bridge                      b. Tunnel                      c. River                      d. Museum
8. .... did you go to the museum ? - Two weeks ago.  
 a. How                      b. Why                      c. Where                      d. When



9. An elephant is ..... than a camel.  
 a. bigger                      b. big                      c. biggest                      d. the biggest
10. Are you going to ..... home by bus after school ?  
 a. travelled                      b. travel                      c. travelling                      d. travels

**السؤال الخامس فى ورقة الامتحان :** يقوم الطالب بتصحيح الكلمات التى تحتها خط فى أربع جمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية فقط.

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. What time did he arrives this morning ? ( ..... )
2. I think tomorrow is very hot. ( ..... )
3. How age is the Luxor Temple ? ( ..... )
4. What's Samy going do ? ( ..... )

**السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان :** مطلوب من الطالب كتابة موضوع تعبير من ٧٠ : ٨٠ كلمة عن موضوع محدد مرتبط بكتاب الطالب.

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

**“A fantastic day in your life”**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

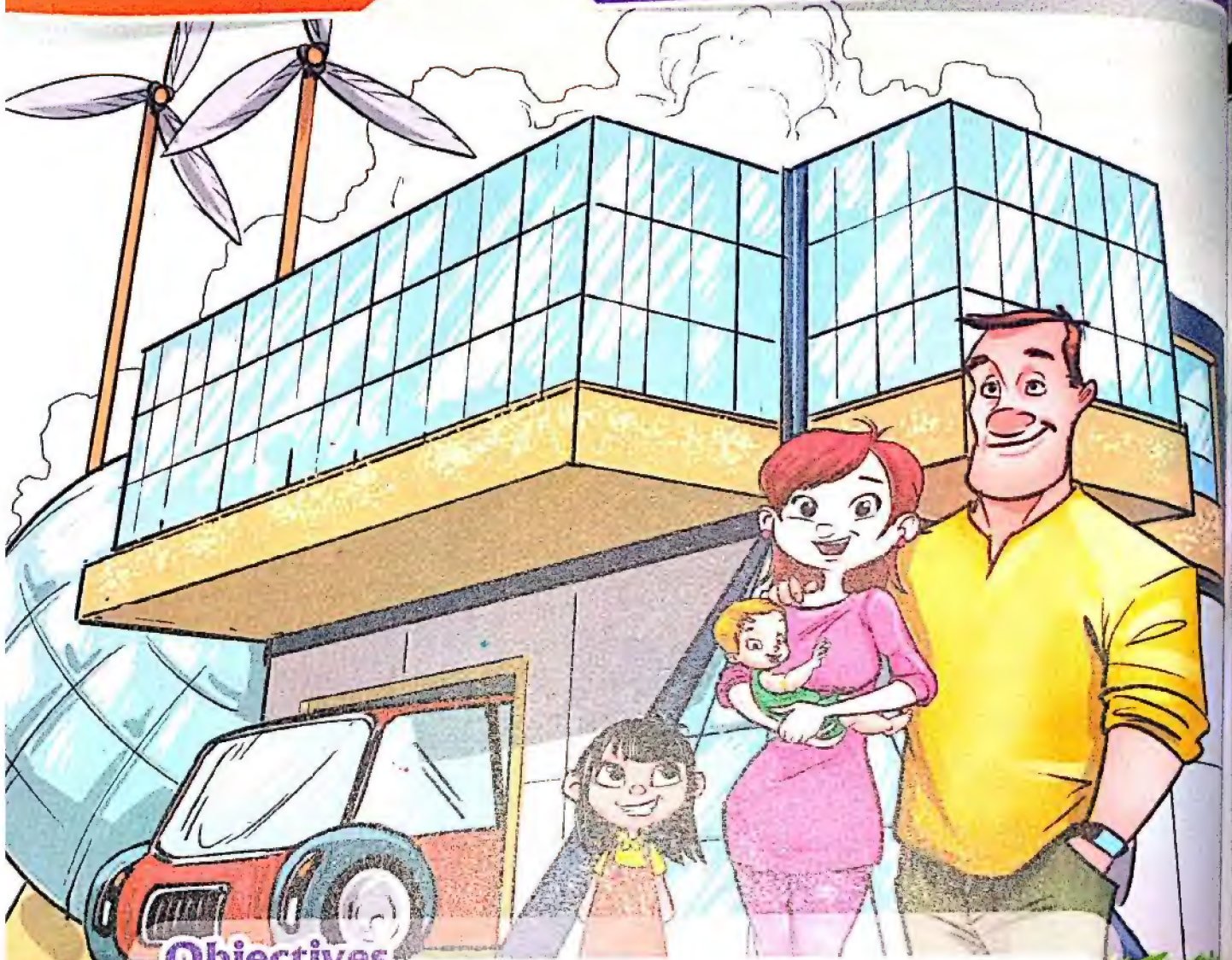
.....



# Unit 10

SB pages 34-43 WB pages 93-99

## Welcome to my home!



### Objectives

#### • Reading :

Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world

#### • Writing :

- A paragraph describing your first school
- A timeline of a famous person's life
- A diagram of future houses.

#### • Listening :

A podcast about homes of the future.

#### • Speaking :

Saying what things are made of; predicting the future

#### • Language :

is/are made of; there was/were; there will/won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years

#### • Life Skills :

Creativity; good listening and self-expression

يمكنك استخدام فكرة Time saving  
اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب

• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات





I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

sofa (n)

كنبة



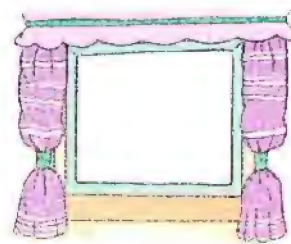
television (n)

تلفزيون



curtains (n)

ستائر



cushion (n)

وسادة



lamp (n)

مصباح



bedroom (n)

غرفة النوم



pencil case (n)

مقلمة



skirt (n)

جيبية



socks (n)

جوارب (شراب)



tablet (n)

كمبيوتر لوحى



teaspoon (n)

معلقة شاي صغيرة



toy (n)

لعبة





## Key Vocabulary

oven (n)	فرن	roof (n)	سطح (المنزل)
bricks (n)	قوالب طوب	tap (n)	حنفية / صنوبر
wallet (n)	محفظة نقود	boat (n)	قارب
cup (n)	فنجان	wall (n)	حائط

## Lesson 1

SB pages 34 &amp; 35 WB page 93

material (n)	المادة الخام	round (adj)	مستدير / كروي
cotton (n)	قطن	answer (n)	إجابة / رد
glass (n)	زجاج	main (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي
leather (n)	جلد	knife (n)	سكين
metal (n)	معدن	seat (n)	مقعد
plastic (n)	بلاستيك	wood (n)	خشب
stone (n)	حجر	wool (n)	صوف
jumper (n)	بلوفر	the Stone Age (n)	العصر الحجري
scarf (n)	كوفية / وشاح	possessions (n)	ممتلكات

## Lesson 2

SB pages 36 &amp; 37 WB page 94

ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	about (adv)	حوالي
Deir el-Medina	قرية دير المدينة	the Nile Valley	وادي النيل
village (n)	قرية	the Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين
paint (ed) (v)	يلون / يدهن	painted walls	حوائط ملونة
kitchen (n)	مطبخ	life (n)	الحياة
living room (n)	غرفة المعيشة		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sleep ينام	slept	slept
be (am – is – are) يكون	was/were	been
eat يأكل	ate	eaten



## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
countable يعد	uncountable لا يعد
singular مفرد	plural جمع

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cotton	a soft, white material from a plant that is used to make clothes	قطن
cushion	a soft object to sit on or rest your head on	وسادة (مخدة)
glass	a hard material that you can see through, used to make bottles, windows, etc	زجاج
leather	the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and bags	جلد
oven	the equipment used for cooking or baking food	فرن
plastic	a light, strong material used for making many things such as toys, rulers, etc	بلاستيك
wood	a natural material that is made from trees	خشب
wool	a soft material that is made from sheep's or goat's hair	صوف
brick	a hard, square object that is used for building walls, houses, etc	قالب طوب
roof	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>this is the place at the top of a house</li> <li>the top part of a building</li> </ul>	سطح منزل
tap	you turn on a tap to get water in the house, garden, etc	حنفية
metal	a hard material, for example, gold, silver	معدن
round	with a shape like a circle	دائري
stone	a hard, natural material that is made from rocks	حجر

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the same نفس الشيء	about two kilometres away	على بعد ٢ كيلومتر
on the roof على السطح / السقف	work in	يعمل في
made of مصنوع من	(be) sure of	متأكد من
get ... from يحصل على ... من	I'm not sure	لست متأكد
the main idea الفكرة الأساسية	with red doors	بأبواب ذات لون أحمر
at night ليلاً		



## II Reading and Listening



### Listening

Lesson 1 WB page 93

**Boy 1 :** What is a car made of ?

**Boy 2 :** That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things.

For example, a **car door**<sup>(1)</sup> is made of **metal**<sup>(2)</sup> and the windows are made of glass.

**Boy 1 :** What are the **seats**<sup>(3)</sup> made of, where you sit ?

**Boy 2 :** I think expensive car seats are made of **leather**<sup>(4)</sup>. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of **plastic**<sup>(5)</sup>.

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) باب السيارة (2) معدن (3) مقاعد (4) جلد (5) بلاستيك



### Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

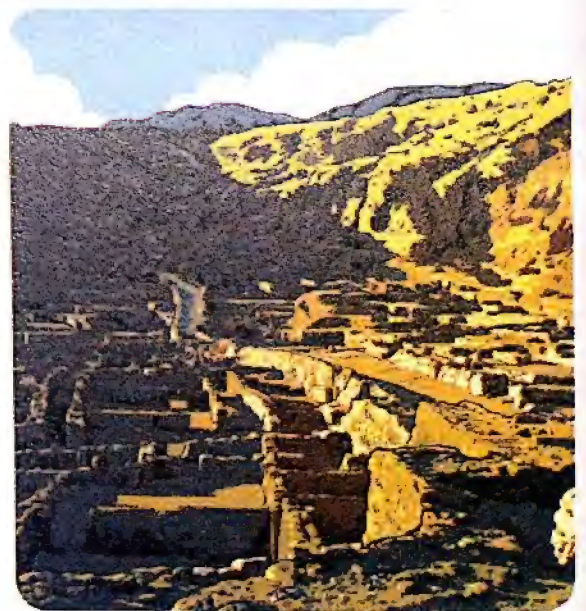
Deir el-Medina

In **ancient Egypt**<sup>(1)</sup>, there was a **village**<sup>(2)</sup> called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in **the Valley of the Kings**<sup>(3)</sup>. There were 68 houses.

The **walls**<sup>(4)</sup> of the houses were made of **bricks**<sup>(5)</sup> and the doors were made of **wood**<sup>(6)</sup>. The people  **painted**<sup>(7)</sup> their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms. People usually slept on the **roof**<sup>(8)</sup> because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an **oven**<sup>(9)</sup> for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any **taps**<sup>(10)</sup>. People got their water from the **Nile valley**<sup>(11)</sup>, about two kilometres away.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) مصر القديمة	(2) قرية	(3) وادى الملوك	(4) حوائط	(5) قوالب طوب	(6) خشب
(7) دهْن / لون	(8) سقف/سطح	(9) فرن	(10) حنفيات	(11) وادى النيل	





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 leather - skin

\* leather جلد (مدبوغ)

ex.: - Shoes and bags are made of leather.

\* skin جلد (الجسم)

ex.: - We can feel things with our skin.

### 2 glass – a glass – glasses

\* glass زجاج

ex.: - Windows are made of glass.

\* a glass كوب

ex.: - Can you bring me a glass of water, please ?

\* glasses أكواب - نظارة

ex.: - He drank 3 glasses of water.

- He is wearing his glasses.

### 3 wood – a wood

\* wood خشب

ex.: - Doors are made of wood.

\* a wood غابة

ex.: - There is a small wood near my house.

### 4 هناك كلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية جمع دائماً وليس لها مفرد وتتكون من جزئين

**socks – pants – trousers – glasses – scissors – scales**

وتستخدم كلمة (a pair of) مع هذه الكلمات بمعنى زوج من لتشير أنها جزئين لا يمكن فصلها عن بعض (أى أنها شئ واحد) ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد.

ex.: - The socks are wet now.

- A pair of socks is blue.

### 5 roof – ceiling

\* roof سطح (المقصود السطح العلوى من المبنى)

ex.: - In summer, some people sleep on the roof at night.

\* ceiling السقف (المقصود السطح الداخلى / سقف الغرفة)

ex.: - There are two lamps and a fan in the ceiling.

**6 tap – tape**

\* tap

صنبور (حنفية)

**ex.:** - Turn off the tap. We don't need any more water.

\* tape

شريط لاصق

**ex.:** - We need paper, sticks and tape to make a kite.**7 (be) called**

يسمى / يدعى

**ex.:** - It was called the Stone Age.**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB** The ..... are made of cotton.  
a. televisions      b. tables      c. cushions      d. lamps
- SB** The ..... is made of stone.  
a. wall      b. table      c. lamp      d. sofa
- WB** You can turn on the ..... to get water.  
a. train      b. tap      c. top      d. toy
- WB** The ..... is on the top of a house.  
a. bedroom      b. wall      c. oven      d. roof

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Most children's toys are made of .....  
a. leather      b. paper      c. plastic      d. cotton
- Most of our furniture is made of .....  
a. leather      b. wool      c. wood      d. metal
- SB** The ..... is made of glass.  
a. curtain      b. cap      c. television      d. sofa
- Teaspoons and some pots are made of .....  
a. wool      b. plastic      c. cotton      d. metal



5. **SB** What's your ..... made of ? – Leather.  
a. table                      b. wallet                      c. television                      d. statue
6. **SB** What is the ..... idea of the article you read ?  
a. mean                      b. main                      c. mine                      d. man
7. The walls of the ancient houses were made of .....  
a. brakes                      b. bricks                      c. breaks                      d. bread
8. **SB** What ..... did people of Deir el-Medina paint their houses ?  
a. subject                      b. colour                      c. age                      d. size
9. The Ancient Egyptians built ..... for making bread in their kitchens.  
a. houses                      b. walls                      c. ovens                      d. roofs
10. People in Deir el-Medina slept ..... the roof of their houses.  
a. at                      b. in                      c. on                      d. for
11. In winter, we put on ..... clothes to keep us warm.  
a. wool                      b. plastic                      c. stone                      d. glass



## Language

**(1) ..... is/are made of .....**

**1** للحدث عن المادة الخام المصنوع منها شيء ما نستخدم

Object + is/are made of + material  
الشيء المصنوع + المادة الخام المصنوع منها الشيء

### Illustrated examples



is made of



are made of



- ex. - The television is made of glass and plastic.  
- Curtains are made of cotton.  
- The wallet is made of leather.

## 2) للسؤال عما صنع منه الشيء نستخدم :

للـسؤال عن شـيء مفـرد (singular) + اسم مفرد + what is made of ?

- ex. - What is the sofa made of ?  
- The sofa is made of leather.

للـسؤال عن شـيء جمـع (plural) + اسم جمـع + what are made of ?

- ex. - What are the statues made of ?  
- The statues are made of stone.

## كان يوجد / There was / There were (2)

### الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد Countable and uncountable nouns

#### Countable nouns

الأسماء التي تعد (لها جمع)

an apple	تفاحة	apples
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes
a man	رجل	men
an ox	ثور	oxen
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves
a child	طفل	children
a lentil	حبة عدس	lentils

#### Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي لا تعد (ليس لها جمع)  
وتعامل معاملة المفرد أي يأتي بعدها فعل  
في صيغة المفرد

time	وقت	water	ماء
furniture	أثاث	money	نقود
salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
advice	نصيحة	news	اخبار
gold	ذهب	information	معلومات
bread	خبز	molokhia	ملوخية
koshari	كشري	lamb	لحم الحمل

- ex. - Dates are delicious. (تعد)  
- Meat is my favourite food. (لا تعد)

يوجد / لا يوجد (للمفرد / للأسماء التي لا تعد) There is / isn't .....  
يوجد / لا يوجد (للجمع) There are / aren't .....

◀ لاحظ ان :



## 1 Affirmative في صيغة الإثبات

**There was**

+

اسم مفرد

**There was** + اسم مفرد يعد / اسم لا يعد

تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتي بعدها اسم مفرد يعد أو اسم لا يعد

ex. - There was rice in the kitchen.

- There was a sofa in the living room.

**There were**

+

اسم جمع يعد

**There were** + اسم جمع يعد

تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع يعد

ex. - There were boats.

- There were taps.

## 2 Negative في صيغة النفي

**Negative**

**There was not (n't)** + اسم مفرد يعد / اسم لا يعد

ex. - There wasn't a storm yesterday.

**There were not (n't)** + اسم جمع يعد

ex. - There weren't any cars in that street.

## Remember

تذكر

**Negative statements :** في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

(مع الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد):

ex. - There weren't **any** vegetables in the fridge.

- There wasn't **any** meat in the dish.

**Any**

**Interrogative :**

في صيغة الاستفهام :

ex. - Do you have **any** tomatoes?

- Was there **any** salad in the dish?

ex. - There weren't **any** bedrooms.

- There weren't **any** doors.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** What ..... the things in the photos made of ?  
 a. am                      b. is                      c. are                      d. was
2. **SB** The sofa ..... made of leather.  
 a. are                      b. were                      c. is                      d. am
3. **SB** The curtains are ..... of wool.  
 a. making                      b. makes                      c. make                      d. made
4. What ..... your pencil case made of ?  
 a. 's                      b. 're                      c. 've                      d. 'd
5. I'm not sure, I think ..... made of cotton.  
 a. it                      b. its                      c. is it                      d. it's
6. There ..... any cars in ancient Egypt.  
 a. weren't                      b. wasn't                      c. are                      d. isn't
7. There ..... boats in ancient Egypt.  
 a. haven't                      b. hadn't                      c. were                      d. was
8. In ancient Egypt, there ..... a village called Deir el-Medina.  
 a. is                      b. was                      c. were                      d. are
9. The walls of the houses were ..... of bricks.  
 a. make                      b. makes                      c. made                      d. making
10. **WB** There were trains in 1900. There ..... any TVs.  
 a. wasn't                      b. weren't                      c. haven't                      d. aren't

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** When were the Stone Age ? ( ..... )
2. The sofa are made of leather. ( ..... )
3. **WB** What is the car seats made of ? ( ..... )
4. There weren't some taps in ancient Egypt. ( ..... )



## IV Speaking Corner

### Asking and answering about what things are made of :

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مما تصنع الأشياء :

#### Questions ?

- What's your pencil case made of ?  
مما تصنع مقلمتك ؟
- What's your bag made of ?  
مما تصنع حقبتك ؟
- What are the cushions made of ?  
مما تصنع الوسادات ؟

#### Response ✓

- It's made of plastic.  
تصنع من البلاستيك.
- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton.  
أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها تصنع من القطن.
- They are made of cotton.  
تصنع من القطن.

## V Writing

### Stop here !

الجميل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

1. Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt.

١. كانت دير المدينة قرية في مصر القديمة.

2. The people from this village worked in the Valley of the Kings.

٢. كان يعمل الناس من هذه القرية في وادي الملوك.

3. There were 68 houses.

٣. كان يوجد بها ٦٨ منزلًا.

4. The walls of the houses were made of bricks.

٤. كانت حوائط البيوت مصنوعة من الطوب.

5. The houses had no bedrooms.

٥. كانت لا توجد غرف للنوم في تلك المنازل.

6. They painted their houses white with red doors.

٦. كانت المنازل مطلية باللون الأبيض مع أبواب ذات لون أحمر.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. A car door is made of ..... .  
a. metal                      b. plastic                      c. glass                      d. gold
2. Car ..... are made of glass.  
a. doors                      b. seats                      c. windows                      d. tires
3. Some car seats are made of ..... .  
a. plastic                      b. metal                      c. glass                      d. wood
4. Expensive car ..... are made of leather.  
a. seats                      b. windows                      c. doors                      d. wool

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I bought many ..... for my new flat.  
a. plans                      b. objects                      c. subjects                      d. expressions
2. Many chairs are made of ..... .  
a. wool                      b. wood                      c. glass                      d. stones
3. What do you know about the Stone ..... ?  
a. Page                      b. Year                      c. Ago                      d. Age
4. .... are made of cotton.  
a. Cushions                      b. Tables                      c. Lamps                      d. Statues
5. In ancient Egypt, there was a / an ..... called Deir el-Madina.  
a. country                      b. village                      c. street                      d. city
6. We have a/an ..... to cook food in.  
a. oven                      b. seat                      c. air conditioner                      d. knife
7. Turn on the ..... to get water .  
a. trip                      b. tip                      c. tap                      d. tape



8. **SB** In ancient Egypt, there ..... boats.  
a. are                      b. is                      c. were                      d. was
9. Were there ..... kitchens in the past ?  
a. some                      b. so                      c. any                      d. a
10. **SB** The sofa is made ..... leather.  
a. from                      b. to                      c. of                      d. by

**3 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **SB** Lamps are made by glass. ( ..... )
2. **WB** I don't know what it made of. ( ..... )
3. There wasn't no rain. ( ..... )
4. There were any men in the hall. ( ..... )

**4** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

## "Deir el-Medina"

This image shows a single page from a notebook or ledger. It features approximately 20 evenly spaced horizontal blue or grey ruling lines across its width. The left edge of the page has a vertical margin line, creating a narrow left margin. There are no markings, handwriting, or printed text on the page other than the lines themselves.

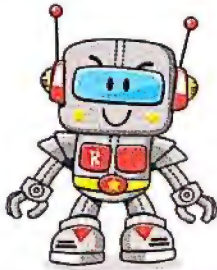


# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

robot (n)

إنسان آلي



solar panels (n)

الألواح الشمسية



electric car (n)

سيارة كهربائية



wind turbines (n)

توربينات الرياح (محركات تعمل بقوة الرياح)



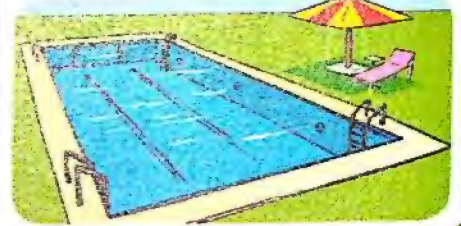
architect (n)

مهندس معماري



swimming pool (n)

حمام سباحة



rocket (n)

صاروخ



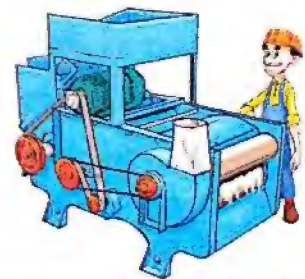
Earth (n)

كوكب الارض



machine (n)

آلة



igloo (n)

منزل من الجليد



moon (n)

قمر



earthquake (n)

زلزال - هزة أرضية





## Key Vocabulary

electricity (n)	كهرباء	warm (adj)	دافئ
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	space (n)	فراغ / مساحة
3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	cool (adj)	لطيف (الجو)
safer (adj)	أكثر أماناً	material (n)	مادة خام
accident (n)	حادث	driverless car (n)	سيارة بدون سائق

## Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

sign (n)	علامة - إشارة	parcels (n)	طرود بريدية
petrol (n)	بنزين	predictions (n)	تنبؤات
produce (d) (v)	ينتج	evidence (n)	برهان / دليل
change (ed) (v) (n)	يغير - تغيير	ordinary (adj)	عادي
robot teacher (n)	المعلم الآلي	fantastic (adj)	رائع
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية / برنامج إذاعي	culture (n)	ثقافة
guest (n)	زائر / ضيف	charger (n)	شاحن (كهربائي)

## Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

area (n)	مساحة / منطقة	Mongolia (n)	جمهورية منغوليا
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	Burkina Faso (n)	دولة بوركينا فاسو
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	Canada (n)	دولة كندا
ground (n)	أرضية / أرض	round building	مبنى مستدير الشكل
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	square building	مبنى مربع الشكل
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	finally (adj)	في النهاية
quieter (adj)	أكثر هدوءاً	cheaper (adj)	أرخص
yurt (n)	خيمة دائرية الشكل	project (n)	مشروع

## Shapes

### أشكال

square	مربع	rectangle	مستطيل
circle	دائرة	triangle	مثلث

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
drive يقود	drove	driven



## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
positive إيجابي	negative سلبي
agree يوافق	disagree يرفض

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cool بارد	a nice temperature that is cold, but not too cold
drone طائرة تعمل بالتحكم من على الأرض (بدون طيار)	a small flying object that you can control from the ground
earthquake زلزال / هزة أرضية	a natural event when the ground suddenly moves
electricity كهرباء	electric power
yurt خيمة دائرية الشكل	a large tent that people can live in
warm دافئ	a nice temperature that is hot but not too hot
igloo مبنى من الثلج	a house made of ice and snow
wind turbine توربين الرياح	a machine that uses the wind to make electricity
solar panel لوح شمسي	a flat glass object that uses the sun to make electricity
driverless car سيارة بدون سائق	a car that can drive itself, without a driver
space فراغ / مساحة	an area that you can move around it
rocket صاروخ	an object that can travel to space

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

design buildings يصمم مباني	heavy snow ثلج كثيف
a sign for electricity إشارة للكهرباء	keep $\begin{cases} \text{warm} \\ \text{cool} \end{cases}$ يحتفظ بالدفء / يحتفظ بالبرودة
make predictions يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	fewer materials مواد أقل
under the sea تحت البحر	How fantastic ! كم هو شيء رائع !
on the moon على سطح القمر	homes of the future منازل المستقبل
listen carefully يستمع بحرص / بعناية	get electricity يولد / يحصل على كهرباء
your own ideas أفكارك الخاصة	make electricity يولد كهرباء
in the past في الماضي / في قديم الزمان	do the housework يقوم بأعمال المنزل
fall from the roof يسقط من السطح	look like يشبه
In what ways ... ? إلى أي مدى ؟	use land telephone يستخدم تليفون أرضي
work on a project يعمل على إنجاز مشروع	look out يحترس
fall to the ground يسقط على الأرض	



## II Reading and Listening



### Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 38

**presenter** : Hello, welcome to our **podcast**<sup>(1)</sup> : Homes of the Future. Today we have a **special guest**<sup>(2)</sup> – Dina Hassan. She is a **famous architect**<sup>(3)</sup>. Hello Dina.

**Dina** : Hello.

**Interviewer** : What does an architect do ?

**Dina** : Well, I **design buildings**<sup>(4)</sup> such as houses or schools. I think about what **materials**<sup>(5)</sup> to use and I draw pictures of it.

**Interviewer** : What are you designing at the moment ?

**Dina** : I'm working on a **project**<sup>(6)</sup> for houses for the future. They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

**Interviewer** : In what ways will they be different ?

**Dina** : Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much **space**<sup>(7)</sup>. So the garden will be on the roof.

**Interviewer** : A garden on the roof, great !

**Dina** : And I think people will all use **electric cars**<sup>(8)</sup> in the future, so there'll be **chargers**<sup>(9)</sup> for electric car next to the house.

**Interviewer** : How will people get their electricity ?



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) نشرة صوتية	(2) ضيف مميز	(3) مهندس معماري مشهور	(4) يصمم مبانى
(5) مواد خام	(6) مشروع	(7) فراغ / مساحة	(8) سيارات كهربائية
			(9) شواحن



- Dina** : There'll be lots of **solar panels**<sup>(10)</sup> and a **wind turbine**<sup>(11)</sup>. They'll make the electricity.
- Interviewer** : Great. What else will be different in 2050 ?
- Dina** : Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.
- Interviewer** : Fantastic! Will people use **drones**<sup>(12)</sup> ?
- Dina** : Yes, I think drones will bring food and **parcels**<sup>(13)</sup> to the house.
- Interviewer** : What materials will the house be made of ?
- Dina** : We will use **plastic bricks**<sup>(14)</sup> that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.
- Interviewer** : Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us. I think I'll like living in this house !

### Check Vocabulary

الواح شمسية (10)    توربين الرياح (11)    طائرات بدون طيار (12)    طرود بريدية (13)    قوالب طوب بلاستيكية (14)

## Reading

### • on Lesson 3 SB page 39

#### Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your **holiday**<sup>(1)</sup>. You will go to the moon! There will be **rockets**<sup>(2)</sup> that leave **Earth**<sup>(3)</sup> every day, and the **journey**<sup>(4)</sup> will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!



#### Driverless cars

In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a **driverless car**<sup>(5)</sup>. They will be **safer**<sup>(6)</sup> and there won't be any **accidents**<sup>(7)</sup>. Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!



### Check Vocabulary

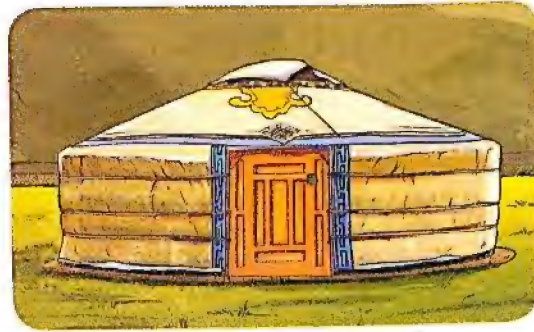
أجازة (1)    صواريخ (2)    الأرض (3)    رحلة طويلة (4)    سيارة بلا سائق (5)    أكثر أماناً (6)    حوادث (7)



• on Lesson 4 SB page 40



An **igloo**<sup>(1)</sup> in Canada



A **yurt**<sup>(2)</sup> in Mongolia



A round house in Burkina Faso



A (round) house in Siwa

Round houses around the world

Many **traditional**<sup>(3)</sup> houses in the past were round. Today, many **modern**<sup>(4)</sup> houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of **reasons**!<sup>(5)</sup>

A **round shape**<sup>(6)</sup> means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an **earthquake**<sup>(7)</sup> or in **strong winds**<sup>(8)</sup>. Also, heavy **snow**<sup>(9)</sup> or **rain**<sup>(10)</sup> will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to **keep warm**<sup>(11)</sup> or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a **rectangle**<sup>(12)</sup> or **square**<sup>(13)</sup>.

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is **cheaper to make**<sup>(14)</sup>). It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

Check Vocabulary

(1) منزل من الجليد	(2) خيم دائرية الشكل تستخدم كمنازل متنقل	(3) تقليدي	(4) حديث
(5) أسياخ / مبررات	(6) شكل دائري	(7) زلزال	(8) رياح شديدة
(9) جليد	(10) مطر	(11) يبقى دافئاً	(12) مستطيل الشكل
(13) مربع الشكل	(14) أرخص في البناء		

## General Notes on Reading and listening

### 1 electricity – electric

\* electricity (n)

**ex.:** - The High Dam produces electricity.

\* electric (adj)

**ex.:** - People will all use electric cars.

كهرباء

كهربى

### 2 sign – signal

\* sign

**ex.:** - This sign means you mustn't smoke here.

\* signal

**ex.:** - He gave me a signal to start driving.

لافتة - لوحة إشارة

إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية)

### 3 solar – lunar

\* solar (adj)

**ex.:** - People will use solar energy in the future.

\* lunar (adj)

**ex.:** - The lunar year is different from the year on the earth.

شمسى

قمرى

### 4 لاحظ استخدام المقطع (-less) فى نهاية بعض الكلمات لتعنى «بدون» أو النفى

- a driverless car = a car without a driver.

- a homeless child = a child who has no house.

- a useless plan = a plan with no use.

### 5 afraid

\* afraid of + (اسم) / (inf + ing)

- Basem is afraid of snakes.

- Ashraf is afraid of flying.

\* afraid to + inf. + ...

**SB** Don't be afraid to express your own ideas.

\* afraid = sorry

- A : Can I speak to Sara, please ?

B : I'm afraid, she is out.

خائف من

خائف أن

أسف



## 6 round / around

\* round (adj)

دائري

**SB** Many traditional houses in the past were round.

\* around (adv)

حول

We hear birds singing around us.

## 7 fall – feel – fail – fill

لاحظ تصريفات ومعاني هذه الافعال :

fall	-	fell	-	fallen
feel	-	felt	-	felt
fail	-	failed	-	failed
fill	-	filled	-	filled

يسقط

يشعر

يرسب / يفشل

يملأ

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People won't use oil in the future, so they will drive ..... cars.

- a. plastic      b. electric      c. toy      d. gas

2. .... help us to produce electricity.

- a. Robots      b. Solar panels  
c. Swimming pools      d. Cameras

3. **SB** ..... design new buildings.

- a. Teachers      b. Doctors      c. Carpenters      d. Architects

4. Wood , iron and plastic are .....

- a. colours      b. materials      c. subjects      d. plants

5. **SB** ..... cars go without a driver.

- a. Helpless      b. Driverless      c. Homeless      d. Colourless

6. **WB** Some houses fell to the ground after the .....

- a. space      b. earthquake      c. robot      d. drone

## Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the future, journeys to the moon will ..... only 12 hours.  
a. make                      b. give                      c. take                      d. have
2. **SB** Driverless cars will be ..... There won't be any accidents.  
a. more dangerous                      b. safer  
c. worse                      d. bigger
3. A computer will ..... the cars instead of people in the future.  
a. cook                      b. drive                      c. play                      d. damage
4. I don't have my car today. Can you ..... me to my work ?  
a. make                      b. drive                      c. help                      d. have
5. Students, in the future, won't need to go to schools. They will depend on robot .....  
a. painters                      b. cooks                      c. teachers                      d. doctors
6. A/An ..... house is a round house in Canada. It's made of ice.  
a. rondavel                      b. yurt                      c. igloo                      d. tent
7. **SB** It's easy to ..... warm or cool in round houses.  
a. get                      b. keep                      c. give                      d. take
8. **SB** "....." is an area that you can move around in.  
a. Slice                      b. Spice                      c. Space                      d. Peace
9. **SB** A nice temperature that is hot but not too hot is called .....  
a. freezing                      b. cold                      c. boiling                      d. warm
10. **SB** A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold is called .....  
a. very hot                      b. freezing                      c. cool                      d. warm
11. **WB** This is a ..... shape. It is a rectangle.  
a. round                      b. triangular                      c. rectangular                      d. circle
12. **WB** This is a round shape. It is a .....  
a. circle                      b. triangle                      c. round                      d. square





## Language

### The future with "will" : المستقبل باستخدام (will)

#### Formation التكوين

##### 1 Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

Subject + will + (inf.)  
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. He will go to the zoo.

##### 2 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

Subject + will not / won't + (inf.)  
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. He won't go to school tomorrow.

##### 3 Interrogative

صيغة الاستفهام

(أ) السؤال بـ «هل» : (a) Yes / No question :

will + subject + (inf.) + .....?  
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. - Will you play football with me ?

- Yes, I will.

- No, I won't.

(ب) السؤال بكلمة إستفهام : (B) Wh-question :

question word + will + subject + (inf.) + .....?  
كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. - What will you eat for lunch ?

## Usage الاستخدام

## Prediction without evidence :

تستخدم (will+ inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل (بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشيء) تأتي معها كلمات مثل :

I'm sure	expect	think	hope	probable	probably	perhaps
أنا متأكد	يتوقع	يعتقد	يتمنى	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

هنا في هذه الجملة اتحدث عن رأيي في الطقس ولكن ليس معي دليل إذا ما كان الطقس سيكون لطيفاً أم لا.

ex.: I think the weather **will be** nice later.

## كما يمكن ان تستخدم في الحالات الآتية

## (1) Quick decision :

(١) عند اتخاذ قرار سريع (لحظة الكلام) :

ex.: - I'm hungry. I'll **have** a sandwich.

- The phone is ringing, I'll **answer** it.

## (2) Request :

(٢) عند طلب شيء من شخص :

ex.: **Will** you **shut** the door, please ?

## (3) Offer :

(٣) عند عرض أو تقديم شيء :

ex.: I **will help** you with your homework.

## (4) Facts in the future :

(٤) عند ذكر حقيقة في المستقبل :

ex.: Next year, I **will be** 17 years old.

## Exercises on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB** The garden ..... be on the roof.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. will                      d. had
- SB** People won't all ..... electric cars.  
a. used                      b. uses                      c. using                      d. use
- SB** There will ..... lots of solar panels.  
a. being                      b. been                      c. be                      d. to be



4. **SB** How does Dina think people will ..... their electricity?  
a. got                      b. get                      c. gets                      d. getting
5. **SB** Will she ..... a garden on the roof?  
a. has                      b. had                      c. having                      d. have
6. **SB** In 2080, you ..... go to the beach for your holiday.  
a. won't                      b. won't be                      c. won't have                      d. will have
7. **SB** We will all ..... a driverless car.  
a. used                      b. using                      c. uses                      d. use
8. **SB** What will the houses ..... like?  
a. looks                      b. look                      c. looked                      d. looking
9. **WB** I think we ..... more robots in our schools.  
a. are having                      b. will have                      c. are going to have                      d. have
10. I think that drones ..... bring our food and parcels in 2080.  
a. will                      b. are going to                      c. going to                      d. will go

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** There will been a swimming pool. ( ..... )
2. **SB** What materials will the house being made of? ( ..... )
3. **SB** We won't goes to the moon. ( ..... )
4. **SB** The journey will took only 12 hours. ( ..... )

## IV Speaking corner

### 1 Predicting the future :

التنبؤ بالمستقبل

**subj. + will / won't + inf.**

- ex.:** - There **will** be electric cars in the future.  
- There **won't** be ordinary mobiles.

التعبير عن الأفكار والآراء :

## 2 Expressing ideas and opinions

1. I think ..... ما أعتقد
2. I agree ..... أوافق ..... with you.
3. I don't agree ..... لا أوافق ..... with you.
4. I'm not sure. غير متأكد
5. I'm ..... صفة ..... to express my own ideas.
6. I would like to ..... ما أفضله

- ex.: 1- A : I think we will all use driverless cars.  
 B : I disagree. I think we will use electric cars.
- 2- A : I think there will be robot teachers.  
 B : I'm not sure.



## Writing

### Stop here !

الجملة الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

#### «Round houses»

1. Many countries have round houses. ١. كثير من الدول لديها منازل مستديرة.
2. Round houses are strong. ٢. المنازل المستديرة قوية.
3. Round houses are easier to keep warm or cool. ٣. المنازل المستديرة أسهل في الحفاظ بالدفء أو البرودة.
4. They are cheap and use few materials. ٤. هم أرخص ويستخدمون مواد خام أقل.
5. I'd like to live in a round house. ٥. أريد أن أعيش في منزل مستدير.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The text is about things will happen .....  
a. in the past      b. now      c. in the future      d. today
2. .... will do the housework.  
a. Rabbits      b. Bricks      c. Robots      d. Ropes
3. We will build houses using ..... bricks.  
a. glass      b. plastic      c. wood      d. iron
4. .... are cheap.  
a. Robots      b. Plastic bricks      c. Houses      d. Computers

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What's your job ?

B : I'm an (1) .....

A : (2) ..... does an architect do ?

B : An architect designs new buildings.

A : What are you (3) ..... at the moment ?

B : A project about houses in the future.

A : How about the (4) ..... ?

B : The gardens will be on the roof.

A : (5) ..... ?

B : Because there won't be much space.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Wind turbines will make .....  
a. electricity      b. industry      c. sound      d. clouds
2. Solar panels get their energy from the .....  
a. moon      b. sun      c. planet      d. earth

3. .... cars have no drivers.  
 a. Old                      b. Electric                      c. Driverless                      d. Fashionable
4. .... can leave the Earth to the moon.  
 a. Rackets                      b. Guns                      c. Planes                      d. Rockets
5. When there's a/an ....., we feel the ground moves.  
 a. volcano                      b. earthquake                      c. wind                      d. storm
6. The opposite of the word "cool" is .....  
 a. warm                      b. worm                      c. hot                      d. rainy
7. **SB** I think we will live on the moon; it is my .....  
 a. land                      b. dream                      c. drone                      d. robot
8. I think there ..... robot teachers in the future.  
 a. be                      b. are                      c. will be                      d. will
9. **SB** Will there ..... ordinary mobiles in the future ?  
 a. is                      b. are                      c. be                      d. were
10. I think we will ..... electric cars.  
 a. use                      b. to use                      c. using                      d. be used

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Will we to have driverless cars ? ( ..... )
2. I think there aren't be driverless cars in the future. ( ..... )
3. Hatem won't goes to the museum. ( ..... )
4. **SB** Will there were ordinary mobiles in the future ? ( ..... )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاوب عند في نهاية الكتاب

"Round houses"

.....

.....

.....

.....





I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

ride a bike

يركب عجلة



school (n)

مدرسة



The Red Sea البحر الأحمر



house (n)

منزل



draw (v)

يرسم



write down (v)

يدون

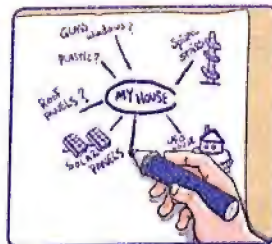


make a plan

يضع خطة



diagram (n) رسم توضيحي



room (n)

حجرة / غرفة



technology (n) تكنولوجيا



calender (n)

تقويم



footballer (n)

لاعب كرة قدم





## Key Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مدهش	timeline (n)	جدول زمني / تسلسل زمني
Mount Kiliminjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	divide (d) (v)	يُقسم

## Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 97

learn (ed) (v)	يتعلم	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
events (n)	أحداث	African (adj)	أفريقي
European (adj)	أوروبي	Champions League (n)	دوري الأبطال
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش		

## Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 98

creative (adj)	مبتكر / إبداعي	heading (n)	عنوان / رأس السؤال
task (n)	مهمة	imagination (n)	خيال / تخيل
detail (n)	تفصيل	decide (d) (v)	يقرر / يحدد
size (n)	حجم	shape (n)	شكل
first	أولاً	text (n)	نص
then	ثم	introductory (n)	فقرة تمهيدية
now	الآن	topic sentence (n)	جملة رئيسية
explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح	description (n)	وصف
change (d) (v), (n)	يغير / تغيير	compare (d) (v)	يقارن

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يفكر	thought	thought
keep يحافظ / يحتفظ	kept	kept
bear يلد	bore	born



learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
win يفوز / يكسب	lose يخسر
start يبدأ	finish ينهي
ancient قديم	modern حديث / عصري

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

imagination	using the mind to think creatively	خيال
round	with a shape like a circle	دائري
yurt	a large tent that people live in	خيمة دائرية

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have fun يستمتع	think about / of يفكر في
live in يعيش في	different to مختلف عن
as many as you can بقدر ما تستطيع	change any ideas that don't work قم بتغيير أي أفكار لا تؤدي الغرض
in more detail بتفصيل أكثر	move house انتقل لمنزل آخر
play for يلعب (لصالح فريق)	African footballer of the year in 2017 احسن لاعب افريقي لعام ٢٠١٧
European Champions League دوري أبطال أوروبا	start school يبدأ دراسة
draw a plan يرسم خطة	compare with يقارن بـ
I hope so anyway أمل ذلك على أي حال	

## II Reading and Listening

### Reading on Lesson 6 WB page 98

#### 1. No more journeys by plane

Today, I am going to describe what I think holidays will be like in the future.



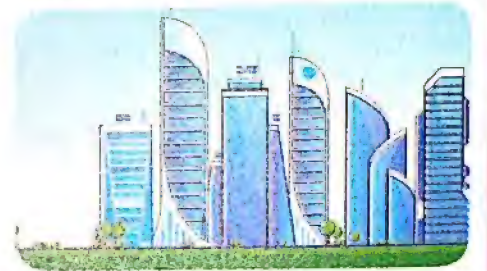
#### 2. The schools of tomorrow

I want to explain how I planned the school building you can see above.



#### 3. Taller, cleaner, better

Today's cities are usually big, noisy and dirty, but what will they be like in the future?



### Listening on Lesson 5 WB page 97

**Voice** : Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland<sup>(1)</sup> to play for<sup>(2)</sup> Basel in 2012.

In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year<sup>(3)</sup> in 2017 and in 2019, he won<sup>(4)</sup> the European Champions League<sup>(5)</sup> with Liverpool.

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) سويسرا (2) يلعب لـ (3) احسن لاعب كرة قدم فى افريقيا (4) فاز (5) دورى أبطال أوروبا





# Listening

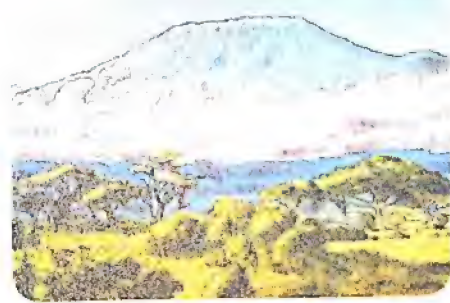
on Lesson 5 SB page 41

- A** Voice 1 : **twenty fifty.**  
 Voice 2 : **twenty twenty.**  
 Voice 3 : **twenty thirty-five.**  
 Voice 4 : **nineteen ninety-nine.**

- B** Voice : ten sixty-six / two thousand / nineteen twenty-three /  
 two thousand and eight / three thousand and one /  
 twenty seventy-five

## C Basel's timeline<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Basel** : Hi, I'm Basel. These are the  
**important events<sup>(2)</sup>** in my life.  
 I was born in 2007 in Alexandria.  
 I started school in 2012.  
 I liked my school!  
 I learned to ride a bike in 2013. I love my bike !  
 In 2018, we **moved house<sup>(3)</sup>**. We live in Cairo now.  
 In 2019, we **went on holiday<sup>(4)</sup>** to the Red Sea. It was **amazing<sup>(5)</sup>**!  
 In 2023! I will climb **Mount Kilimanjaro<sup>(6)</sup>** - I hope so **anyway<sup>(7)</sup>**!



### Check Vocabulary

(1) خط زمني / تسلسل زمني	(2) أحداث هامة	(3) انتقل لمنزل جديد	(4) ذهبنا في إجازة
(5) مذهش	(6) جبل كليمنجارو	(7) على أي حال / بأي طريقة	



## General Notes on Reading and Listening

### 1 learn + (how) to + inf. ....

يتعلم أن .....

**ex.:** I learned (how) to ride a bike when I was young.

### 2 on holiday

في إجازة

**ex.:** Walaa went on holiday last Tuesday.

**3 (be) born in ... (مكان / سنة)**

ولد في

**ex.:** Jana was born in 2008.**4 look like / look alike**

يُشبه

\* look like

**ex.:** Toka looks like her mother.

متشابه

\* look alike

**ex.:** Toka and her mother look alike.**5 in detail**

بالتفصيل

**ex.:** Tell me everything about you in detail.**6 other - another**

آخرون - آخر

\* other + اسم مفرد / اسم جمع

**ex.:** - Are there any other questions ?

- There are two cars. One is red. The other car is black

\* another + اسم مفرد

آخر (الثاني من نفس النوع)

**ex.:** I'll design another plan.**7 move house = move to a new house**

ينتقل إلى منزل جديد

**ex.:** Last year I moved house / moved to a new house in Giza.**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All the ideas he suggested were .....

a. creative

b. creature

c. alive

d. living

2. His new song was ..... We all liked it.

a. amazed

b. amazing

c. worrying

d. terrible

3. Modern ..... improved our life a lot.

a. sizes

b. champions

c. technology

d. texts



4. Write the important events in your life in a .....  
 a. time                      b. timeline                      c. map                      d. corner

## **Exercise on Vocabulary**

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- In 2012, Mr Ahmed ..... to a new house.  
 a. look                      b. moved                      c. born                      d. lived
- What will your future house ..... like ?  
 a. put                      b. take                      c. look                      d. make
- You should write ..... the important notes during English class.  
 a. up                      b. on                      c. down                      d. over
- You should think about your new ideas in ..... to choose the best.  
 a. total                      b. detail                      c. careful                      d. problem
- Good students ..... plans for their ideas before studying.  
 a. take                      b. make                      c. do                      d. think
- The teacher asked me to compare my answers ..... my friend and choose the best.  
 a. of                      b. with                      c. from                      d. to
- Can you ..... three predictions about your house in the future ?  
 a. give                      b. take                      c. do                      d. make

## **Speaking corner**

### **Saying years :**

### **كيفية نطق السنوات :**

- a** We usually divide the years into two parts : عادة ما نقسم السنوات لجزئين  
 2050 = twenty fifty                      1977 = nineteen seventy seven
- b** For the year 2000, we say : أما بالنسبة لعام ٢٠٠٠ نقول :  
 2000 = two thousand
- c** For the years 2001 : 2009 we say : أما بالنسبة للأعوام من ٢٠٠١ حتى ٢٠٠٩ نقول :  
 two thousand + number رقم  
 2001 = two thousand and one / 2006 = two thousand and six

## IV

## Writing

## Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

## Timeline

1. I was born in nineteen ninety five. ١. ولدت في عام ١٩٩٥.
2. I started school in two thousand and one. ٢. بدأت الدراسة في عام ٢٠٠١.
3. I learnt to ride a bike in 2010. ٣. تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٠.
4. I moved to a new house in twenty seventeen. ٤. انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٧.
5. I went to the Red Sea on holiday in 2018. ٥. ذهبت في أجازة إلى البحر الأحمر في عام ٢٠١٨.

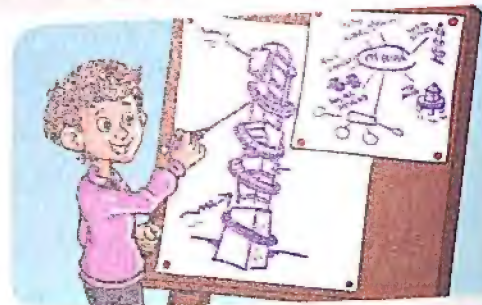
## Writing Skills on SB page 42

How to plan<sup>(1)</sup> a creative<sup>(2)</sup> writing task.

First, think of as many **ideas**<sup>(3)</sup> as you can. What will the house **look like**<sup>(4)</sup>? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can **write down**<sup>(5)</sup> or draw your ideas.

Use your **imagination**<sup>(6)</sup> and **have fun**!<sup>(7)</sup> Then, **decide**<sup>(8)</sup> which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time. Finally think about your best ideas **in more detail**<sup>(9)</sup>. How can you make the idea work?

**Make a plan**<sup>(10)</sup> (maybe in a **diagram**<sup>(11)</sup> or drawing). You can **change**<sup>(12)</sup> any ideas that **don't work**<sup>(13)</sup>.



## Check Vocabulary

(1) خطة	(2) إبداعي	(3) أفكار	(4) يشبه	(5) يذون	(6) خيال	(7) استمتع
(8) اتخذ قرار	(9) بتفاصيل أكثر	(10) ضع خطة	(11) رسم توضيحي	(12) يغير	(13) غير فاعلة / لا تؤدي الفرض	



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. In ..... , we moved house.  
a. 2013                      b. 2018                      c. 2012                      d. 1990
2. We went on holiday to ..... .  
a. the River Nile    b. the Red Sea    c. Cairo                      d. Alexandria
3. Now, we live in ..... .  
a. Cairo                      b. the Red Sea    c. Aswan                      d. Luxor
4. I learned to ..... a bike in 2013.  
a. drive                      b. buy                      c. ride                      d. give

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** I was born ..... 2008.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. by
2. What technology ..... in the future ?  
a. did you have    b. do you have    c. will you have    d. you have
3. In 2030, there ..... many good teachers at my school.  
a. are                      b. were                      c. will be                      d. would be
4. When you paint a picture, you should use your ..... .  
a. introductory    b. imagination    c. event                      d. start
5. Remember to be ..... when you describe your house in the future.  
a. active                      b. creative                      c. voluntary                      d. related
6. **WB** Mohamed Salah won the European Champions ..... with Liverpool in 2019.  
a. Timeline                      b. League                      c. Diagram                      d. Plan
7. **WB** Mohamed Salah was ..... footballer of the year in 2017.  
a. Africa                      b. African                      c. European                      d. Switzerland

8. **WB** Enjoy your time and have .....

9. **SB** Make a ..... of what you are going to do.

10. When you ..... something, you have an idea in your mind.

1. Which house will you live on? (.....)

2. **WB** We will had modern technology in the future. (.....)

3. **SB** She was born on 2010. (.....)

4. Write on your own ideas. ( )

**تجارت و بازرگانی**

214





## 1. Vocabulary

sofa	كنبة	curtains	ستائر
materials	مواد خام	cushion	وسادة (مخدة)
teaspoon	ملعقة شاي صغيرة	wallet	محفظة (نقود)
leather	جلد	wool	صوف
stone	حجر	bricks	قوالب طوب
possessions	ممتلكات	taps	حنفيات/صنابير
oven	فرن	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
solar panels	الواح شمسية	drones	طائرات بدون طيار
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	charger	شاحن
earthquake	زلازل	diagram	رسم توضيحي
traditional	تقليدي	champions	أبطال
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	introductory	مقدمة تمهيدية
events	أحداث	creative	مبتكر / ابداعي
description	وصف	roof	مسطح

## 2. Language

### Future with "will"

تستخدم (will) لإعطاء معلومات مستقبلية.

- I think it **will be** hot tomorrow.
- The party **will start** at two o'clock.

تستخدم (will) عندما تقرر فعل شيء وقت الكلام أو أثناء التحدث.

- I think I'll go to bed now.

تستخدم (will) مع الحقائق المستقبلية (لا نية فيها).

- Next year, I'll be 12.

## There was / were + a/an , some , any

### Positive (+)

There	was	a table. <b>some</b> water.
	were	<b>two</b> books. <b>some</b> books.

### Negative (-)

There	wasn't	a table. <b>any</b> water.
	weren't	<b>any</b> books. <b>any</b> books.

## 3. Speaking

### (1) Saying what things are made of

- What's your pencil case made of ?
- It's made of plastic.

### (2) Predicting the future :

**A :** I think we will all use driverless cars in 2050.

**B :** I disagree. I think we'll all use electric cars.

### (3) Saying years :

2030 : twenty thirty.

2000 : two thousand.

1986 : nineteen eighty-six

## 4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

### Model Paragraph

#### "Deir el-Medina in ancient Egypt"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. People from this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. They painted their houses white, with red doors. The walls of their houses were made of bricks and the doors of wood. Their houses had a kitchen and a living room. There was usually an oven for making bread. There weren't any bedrooms, so people usually slept on the roof at night because it was very hot . There weren't any taps, so people got their water from the Nile Valley.



## 5. Writing Skill



### Study

\* معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية :

\* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics	Helpful Expressions
الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	تعبيرات مساعدة
1. My first school	- (تاريخ / مكان) was born in (فاعل).
2. A famous person	- (تاريخ) started school in (فاعل).
3. Life in the future	- In my first school, there were / weren't (اسم جمع).
4. Life in ancient Egypt	- There was / wasn't (اسم مفرد).
	- (مادة خام) was / were made of (اسم شيء).
	- (مادة خام) will be made of (اسم شيء).
	- There will / won't be (اسم شيء).
	- People will / won't use (اسم شيء).



### Try

\* حاول أن تكتب جملة على كل كلمة من الكلمات التالية باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة :

Word	Try to make a sentence
- electric cars	There will be electric cars in the future.
- land telephones	.....
- teachers	.....
- solar panels	.....
- houses	.....



### Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
"Life in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Test on unit 70



تنويه

يمكنك حل  
الاختبار إلكترونياً  
وتصويبه

## A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

- Mohamed Salah was born in .....  
a. Cairo                      b. Zagazig                      c. Fayoum                      d. Alexandria
- Salah played for ..... in 2010.  
a. El Mokawloon                      b. Basel                      c. Liverpool                      d. Al Ahly
- Salah started playing football in .....  
a. 2018                      b. 1992                      c. 2010                      d. 2012
- ..... is in Switzerland.  
a. Basel                      b. Liverpool                      c. Manchester                      d. El Mkawloon

## B. Language Function

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What's this picture about ?

B : About the (1) ..... Egyptian.

A : (2) ..... did they live ?

B : Ancient people lived about 5000 years ago.

A : Were there any cars then ?

B : No, there (3) .....

A : Then, how did they travel ?

B : (4) ..... camels.

A : How did they get water ?

B : (5) ..... the well.

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons ! A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall



from the **roof**. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. **It** also has more space inside. How fantastic!

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....

2. Do you think that traditional houses were comfortable ? Why / Why not ?

.....

3. What happens to round buildings when there's heavy snow or rain ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The "**roof**" is the place ..... of a building.

- a. at the bottom      b. at the top      c. inside      d. in front

5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to .....

- a. a round building      b. space      c. square      d. rectangle

6. Round, square and rectangle are all ..... for buildings.

- a. places      b. shapes      c. pieces      d. spaces

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. **SB** The people ..... their houses white, with red doors.

- a. played      b. painted      c. ate      d. drove

2. Change the ideas that don't .....

- a. make      b. work      c. do      d. take

3. People got their water from the Nile ....., about 2 km away.

- a. Island      b. Valley      c. Temple      d. Kitchen

4. Mum used the ..... to make bread.

- a. oven      b. kitchen      c. curtains      d. cushions

5. The word "ancient" is the opposite of ..... .  
 a. old                      b. traditional                      c. modern                      d. able
6. We can get electricity from solar ..... .  
 a. planes                      b. panels                      c. pens                      d. poles
7. I enjoyed my journey. It was really ..... .  
 a. amazing                      b. amazed                      c. expensive                      d. excited
8. I think people ..... live on the moon in the future.  
 a. would                      b. be                      c. will                      d. are
9. There weren't ..... books here.  
 a. some                      b. no                      c. any                      d. one
10. He'll ..... to Luxor soon.  
 a. travelling                      b. to travel                      c. travels                      d. travel

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** I think people will all used electric cars. ( ..... )
2. What is your sunglasses made of ? ( ..... )
3. **WB** What it's made of ? ( ..... )
4. He was born in two hundred two (2002). ( ..... )

### E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

تجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"My home in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Unit 11

SB pages 44:53 WB pages 100:106

## On land and sea



### Objectives

#### • Reading :

A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea

#### • Writing :

Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day

#### • Listening :

A talk at a nature reserve.

#### • Speaking :

Talking about saving the environment

#### • Language :

Zero conditional; must/mustn't; should/shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions

#### • Life Skills :

Collaboration; setting clear goals

يمكنك استخدام فكرة Time saving  
اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب

• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات





I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

coral reef (n) شعاب مرجانية



jellyfish (n) قنديل البحر



dolphin (n) دولفين



planet (n) كوكب



tooth (n) سنه



octopus (n) أخطبوط



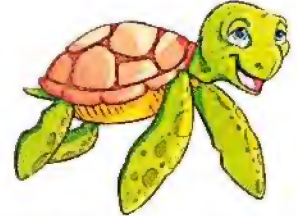
shark (n) سمكة القرش



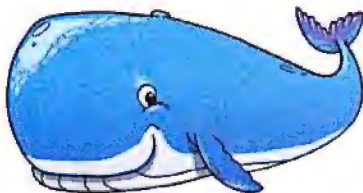
stingray (n) سمكة الراي اللاسع



sea turtle (n) سلحفاة بحرية



whale (n) حوت



shell (n) صدفة



tail (n) ذيل





## Key Vocabulary

sea life (n)	حياة بحرية	environment (n)	البيئة
ocean (n)	محيط	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تصنيع
sting (v)	يلسع	rubbish (n)	قمامة
poisonous (adj)	سام		

## Lesson 1

SB pages 44 &amp; 45 WB page 100

plant (ed) (v), (n)	يزرع - نبات	away (adv)	بعيداً
sea animals (n)	حيوانات بحرية	test (ed) (v), (n)	يختبر / اختبار
teeth (n)	أسنان	pencil case (n)	مقلمة
danger (n)	خطر	ice (n)	ثلج
flat (adj)	مسطح	turn (ed) (v)	يتحول
hard (adj)	صلب	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
touch (ed)(v)	يلمس	garden (n)	حديقة (خاصة)
facts (n)	حقائق	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي

## Lesson 2

SB pages 46 &amp; 47 WB page 101

save (d) (v)	يحفظ	die (d) (v)	يموت
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	materials (n)	مواد خام
sea birds	طيور بحرية	paper (n)	ورق
shopping bags	شنط التسوق	glass (n)	زجاج
problem (n)	مشكلة	necessary (adj)	هام / ضروري
photos (n)	صور	view (n)	منظر
classroom (n)	فصل دراسي	mountain (n)	جبل
lake (n)	بحيرة	weather (n)	طقس
stop (ped) (v)	يتوقف	sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي
air (n)	هواء	road (n)	طريق
text (n)	نص (رسالة)		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
grow ينمو	grew	grown
lose يفقد/ يخسر	lost	lost
swim يسبح	swam	swum
sting يلسع	stung	stung
hit يضرب / يصد	hit	hit
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
dangerous خطير	safe آمن
lose يفقد / يخسر	win يكسب
heavy ثقيل	light خفيف
late متأخر	early مبكر
fast سريع	slow بطئ
noisy مزعج	quiet هادئ
die يموت	live يعيش
forget ينسى	remember يتذكر

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

coral reef	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals (coral)	شعاب مرجانية
environment	the world around us	بيئة
flat	having no high areas	مسطح
jellyfish	a sea animal with a soft body that you can see through. It stings when you touch it.	قنديل البحر
ocean	a large sea	محيط
whale	it is the biggest and heaviest sea animal	حوت
coral	it makes a reef at the bottom of the ocean	مرجان



<b>octopus</b>	a sea animal with eight legs	أخطبوط
<b>planets</b>	objects like the Earth that go around the sun	كواكب
<b>poisonous</b>	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you	سام
<b>recycle</b>	use again	يعيد تدوير
<b>rubbish</b>	things you do not need	قمامة
<b>shark</b>	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth	سمكة قرش
<b>shell</b>	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc.	صدفة / قوقعة
<b>sting</b>	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself	يلدغ
<b>stingray</b>	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting	سمكة الراى اللاسع
<b>tail</b>	the part that is at the end of an animal's body	ذيل
<b>throw away</b>	put something you do not need somewhere	يلقى بعيداً
<b>sea turtle</b>	a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back	سلحفاة بحرية
<b>whale</b>	the largest sea animal in the world	حوت

### Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make oceans dirty	يجعل المحيطات غير نظيفة	watch a lot of TV	يشاهد التلفاز كثيراً
stay safe	يبقى آمناً	swim away	يسبح بعيداً
stay in	يبقى / يمكث فى	walk on the grass	يمشى على الحشائش
get rid of	يتخلص من	get home from	يصل للمنزل من
made of	مصنوع من	a good view of	منظر جميل لـ
run across	يجرى عبر	give us clean air	يعطينا هواء نظياً
jump out of water	يقفز خارج الماء	dangerous for	خطر على
wake early	يستيقظ مبكراً	feel tired	يشعر بالتعب
go to bed	يذهب إلى الفراش	feel ill	يشعر بالمرض
more than once	أكثر من مرة	hit with their tails	يضربوا بذيولهم

throw away	يلقى بعيداً	find a safe place to cross	يجد طريقاً آمناً للعبور
take a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً	in danger	في خطر
turn to / into	يتحول إلى	die from	يموت من
good for	جيد / مفيد لـ	easier to recycle	أسهل في إعادة التصنيع
use again = recycle	يستخدم مرة أخرى / يعيد تدوير	necessary to + inf.	ضروري لـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	(be) not allowed to + inf.	غير مسموح بـ
take off	يخلع (ملابسه أو حذائه)	on roads	على الطرق
go into the shell	يدخل إلى داخل الصدفة	protect .... from	يحمي ... من
write a text	يكتب نص / رسالة	go around the sun	يدور حول الشمس

## Collocations

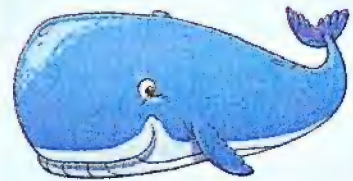
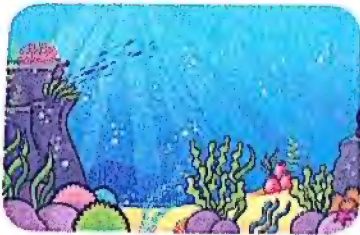
## متلازمات لفظية

<b>take</b> time	يستغرق وقت	<b>have</b> a test	يمتحن
a photo	يلتقط صورة / يصور		

## II Reading

## Reading

### • on Lesson 1 SB page 45



### Dangers<sup>(1)</sup> of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the **ocean**<sup>(2)</sup>. If it **loses**<sup>(3)</sup> a tooth, a new one **grows**<sup>(4)</sup>. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

So how do fish and **sea animals**<sup>(5)</sup> **protect**<sup>(6)</sup> themselves from danger?

A **stingray**<sup>(7)</sup> is a big, **flat**<sup>(8)</sup> fish and it lives in the coral reef. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water !

### Check Vocabulary

(1) مخاطر	(2) محيط	(3) يفقد	(4) ينمو	(5) حيوانات بحرية	(6) يحمي	(7) سمكة الراي اللاسع	(8) مستو/مسطح
-----------	----------	----------	----------	-------------------	----------	-----------------------	---------------





A **sea turtle**<sup>(9)</sup> has a hard **shell**<sup>(10)</sup> to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast - the **octopus**<sup>(11)</sup> has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life, like the **jellyfish**<sup>(12)</sup>, is **poisonous**<sup>(13)</sup>. It **stings**<sup>(14)</sup> you when you touch it.

What about the **whales**<sup>(15)</sup>? These big, heavy animals hit with their big **tails**<sup>(16)</sup>!

### Check Vocabulary

• ذبول (16) | حيتان (15) | يلدغ / يأسع (14) | سام (13) | قنديل البحر (12) | اخطبوط (11) | صدفة (10) | سلحفاة بحرية (9)

## • on Lesson 2 SB page 46

### We must save<sup>(1)</sup> our planet<sup>(2)</sup>!

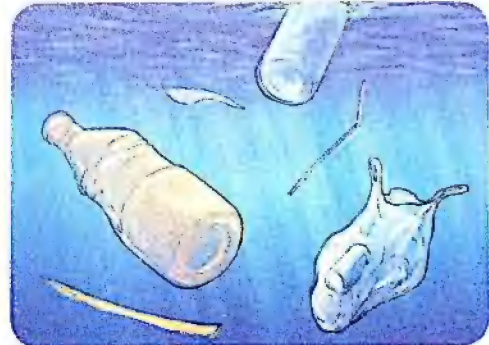
**Plastic**<sup>(3)</sup> is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the **environment**<sup>(4)</sup> for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle**<sup>(5)</sup> some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

We must try to use other **materials**<sup>(6)</sup> – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic **rubbish**<sup>(7)</sup> from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!



### Check Vocabulary

• قمامة (7) | مواد خام (6) | يعيد تصنيع (5) | البيئة (4) | بلاستيك (3) | كوكب (2) | يحمي / ينقذ (1)

## General Notes on Reading

**1** one of the + اسم جمع + صفة تفضيل (تستخدم غالبًا مع صيغة التفضيل)  
**ex.:** SB The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.

**2** protect ..... from ..... يحمي من  
**ex.:** SB How do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger ?

**3** flat شقة  
 \* a flat (n)  
**ex.:** - Hoda lives in a small flat.  
 \* flat (adj) مسطح  
**ex.:** - This table has a flat round top.

**4** cycle / recycle يركب الدراجة  
 \* cycle (v)  
**ex.:** - Ayman usually cycles to school.  
 \* recycle (v) يُعيد تدوير  
**ex.:** SB We can recycle some plastic.

**5** poison – poisonous – poisoned يُسمم / سم  
 \* poison (v) , (n)  
**ex.:** - Man has poisoned rivers and seas.  
**ex.:** - Poison kills people and animals.  
 \* poisonous (adj) سام  
**ex.:** - Don't eat this food. It's poisonous.  
 \* poisoned (adj) مُسمم  
**ex.:** - Most rivers became poisoned nowadays.



**6 die from – die of – die out**

\* die from

يموت من ....

**ex.::** **SB** Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds **die from** plastic.

\* die of

يموت بسبب

**ex.::** - His uncle died of cancer سرطان.

\* die out

ينقرض

**ex.::** - Dinosaurs **died out** millions of years ago.**7 plant – planet**

\* plant (v), (n)

يزرع - نبات

**ex.::** - Try to plant a tree near your house.

\* planet (n)

كوكب

**ex.::** - The Earth الأرض is a planet.**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The ..... is the biggest sea animal.  
a. elephant      b. whale      c. horse      d. stingray
- All ..... have shells on their back.  
a. sharks      b. stingrays      c. turtles      d. whales
- WB** The ..... is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.  
a. jellyfish      b. turtle      c. shark      d. octopus
- A/An ..... is a sea animal which has eight legs.  
a. jellyfish      b. octopus      c. shark      d. whale
- The ..... is everything around us. We must keep it clean.  
a. sea      b. environment      c. planet      d. plant
- To ..... is to collect rubbish and make useful things to use it again.  
a. cycle      b. recycle      c. produce      d. protect
- WB** Earth is one of eight ..... that go around the sun.  
a. environments      b. planets      c. baskets      d. battles

8. In the Red Sea, you can see the most beautiful ..... in the world.  
a. turtles                      b. sharks                      c. whales                      d. coral reefs
9. **SB** A ..... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it.  
a. sea turtle                      b. whale                      c. shark                      d. jellyfish
10. When some sea animals eat plastic things, they die, because these things are .....  
a. useful                      b. healthy                      c. poisonous                      d. clean
11. **SB** A sea turtle has a hard ..... to protect it.  
a. ship                      b. shop                      c. shell                      d. chin
12. **SB** The whales which are heavy sea animals hit with their big .....  
a. fins                      b. wings                      c. legs                      d. tails

## **E** xercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** How do fish and sea animals ..... themselves from danger ?  
a. destroy                      b. grow                      c. protect                      d. touch
2. **SB** If a shark ..... a tooth, a new one grows.  
a. misses                      b. gives                      c. takes                      d. loses
3. **SB** The octopus swims very fast when it's in .....  
a. safe                      b. danger                      c. sleeping                      d. rest
4. **SB** When a turtle is in danger, it ..... into its shell.  
a. climbs                      b. goes                      c. takes                      d. makes
5. When he is ....., he has something to eat.  
a. thirsty                      b. sad                      c. happy                      d. hungry
6. **SB** It will ..... a long time to clean the plastic rubbish from the beaches.  
a. make                      b. give                      c. take                      d. have
7. **SB** Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die ..... plastic.  
a. at                      b. out                      c. in                      d. from
8. To "....." means putting something you don't need somewhere.  
a. put on                      b. come into                      c. throw away                      d. put up
9. **SB** You mustn't talk and write a ..... at the same time!  
a. next                      b. text                      c. ticket                      d. passport

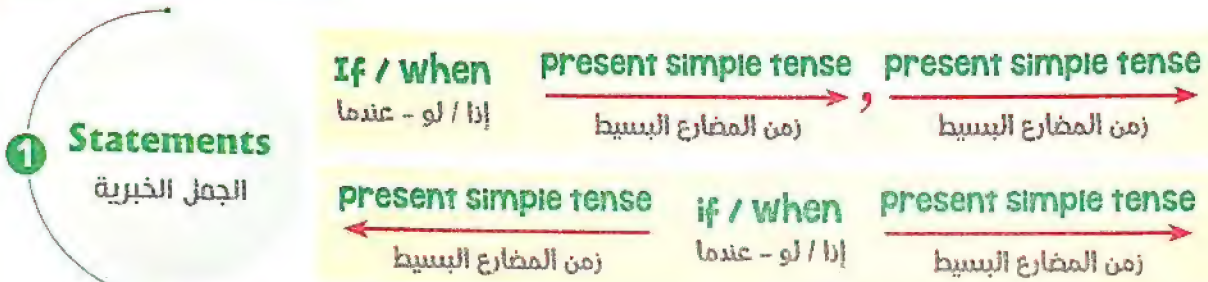




## Language

### (1) Zero conditional with (If or When)

#### Formation التكوين



⚠️ **لا حظ** وضع comma ( , ) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود (If / When) في البداية.

#### Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the zero conditional to say what always happens if/when a certain action takes place.  
١. نستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث دائماً عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين.

ex. - I say hello **when** I see my friends.  
- I wear my jacket **if** it is cold.

2. We use the present simple to talk about the action (with if or when) and the result.

٢. نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن شيء يحدث مع (if/when) وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

ex. - I go to bed **when** I'm tired. - **When** I'm tired, I go to bed.

3. It expresses true situations.  
٣. تعبر عن مواقف حقيقية.

ex. - **If / When** you **touch** the screen, the game **starts**.  
- I **use** my dictionary **if/when** I **don't know** a word.

4. It describes facts related to (nature, physics and astronomy ...).

٤. تصف حقائق ترتبط بـ (الطبيعة والفيزياء والفلك ...).

ex. - **If** you **put** an orange into water, it **floats**.  
- **When** you **add** oil to some water, the oil **floats**.  
- **If/When** something **has** enough air in it, it **doesn't sink**.

## استخدام (If / When) في صيغة الاستفهام :

2 Interrogative  
صيغة الاستفهام

- ex. - Do you feel ill **if/when** you eat too many sweets ?  
 - When you eat too many sweets, do you feel ill ?  
 - What do you do **if/when** your friend feels sad ?  
 - What happens **if/when** you mix red with blue ?

## Exercises on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB** When it's late, I ..... tired.  
 a. feel                      b. felt                      c. feels                      d. feeling
- WB** If my sister watches a lot of TV, she ..... tired.  
 a. feel                      b. felt                      c. feeling                      d. feels
- When you leave ice in the sun, it ..... water.  
 a. became                      b. becomes                      c. becoming                      d. become
- If I ..... rubbish on the ground, I throw it in the rubbish bin.  
 a. sees                      b. saw                      c. see                      d. seen
- SB** If you ..... a jellyfish, it stings you.  
 a. touched                      b. touches                      c. touch                      d. touching
- I wear my jacket ..... it is cold.  
 a. without                      b. so                      c. if                      d. but
- If you put ice outside a freezer, it .....  
 a. melts                      b. melt                      c. melting                      d. melted
- SB** When I am hungry, I ..... something to eat.  
 a. had                      b. has                      c. have                      d. having
- If a shark ..... a tooth, a new one grows.  
 a. lost                      b. lose                      c. losing                      d. loses
- If it's very hot, I ..... on the fan.  
 a. turned                      b. turn                      c. turns                      d. turning



11. **WB** When I feel ill, I ..... to bed.

- a. goes                      b. go                      c. went                      d. gone

12. **WB** When we hear something funny, we all .....

- a. laugh                      b. laughed                      c. laughs                      d. have laughed

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Water is safer to drink if you boils it. ( ..... )
2. If we made noise in class, our teacher feels angry. ( ..... )
3. **SB** Where I've got a test, I always study hard. ( ..... )
4. When it is cold, we wearing heavy clothes. ( ..... )
5. **WB** When it is very cold, water turned into ice. ( ..... )

## (2) must / mustn't

▶ We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary to do.

▶ We use "mustn't" to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

تستخدم "must / mustn't" عندما تريد أن تقول أنه من الضروري القيام أو عدم القيام بشئ ما.

**sub. (الفاعل) + must / mustn't + (inf.)**

**ex.** - You **must** listen carefully to your teachers.

- You **mustn't** use a mobile phone in the class.

.....  
▶ We use "must / mustn't" to ask for necessity

تستخدم "must / mustn't" للسؤال عن الضرورة

**ex.** - Must I buy a ticket ?

Yes, you **must** buy a ticket.

- Where **must** I put the rubbish ?

You **must** put it in a trash bin.

- What **mustn't** you do on roads ?

We **mustn't** play games on roads.

### (3) should / shouldn't.

We use "should/shouldn't" to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do.

نستخدم "should/shouldn't" عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن أشياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

sub. (الفاعل) + should / shouldn't + (inf.)

- ex. - We should recycle plastic.  
- You shouldn't waste your time.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Heba ..... take a taxi. She is very late.  
a. can                      b. must                      c. can't                      d. mustn't
- You ..... speak in the library loudly.  
a. mustn't                      b. can't                      c. must                      d. can
- SB** What must the students ..... with them when they leave?  
a. took                      b. takes                      c. take                      d. taking
- SB** We mustn't ..... on the grass.  
a. walk                      b. walks                      c. walking                      d. to walk
- SB** The animals ..... eat plastic.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. should                      d. have to
- SB** You mustn't ..... angry with people you don't agree with.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. been                      d. to be
- SB** What should I ..... first?  
a. done                      b. did                      c. doing                      d. do
- What ..... we do with the rubbish we find?  
a. have                      b. had                      c. should                      d. haven't



9. **WB** You ..... run across the road. It's not safe.  
 a. should                      b. must                      c. can                      d. mustn't
10. **WB** You ..... look left and right when you cross the road.  
 a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. should                      d. can't
11. **WB** You ..... play games in the road.  
 a. must                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. can

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **WB** You must came early. ( ..... )
2. **SB** We must make a lot of noise. ( ..... )
3. **SB** You shouldn't made decisions or rules yourself. ( ..... )
4. **SB** Why must we cleaned the beaches ? ( ..... )

## IV Speaking Corner

### 1 Describing sea animals :

وصف الحيوانات البحرية

1. It can swim ظرف .
2. It has (عدد) أقدام .
3. It lives in مياه .
4. The سمكة القرش is very dangerous.
5. A سمكة الراي is a big, flat fish.

### 2 Talking about the rules (What we must / mustn't do in/on) ..... ?

الحديث عن القواعد (ما يجب ولا يجب علينا القيام به)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>A</b> : What must I do when I cross the road ? | <b>B</b> : You must look left and right.   |
| 2. <b>A</b> : What mustn't you do on roads ?         | <b>B</b> : We mustn't play games on roads. |

## Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

## «Ways to save the environment»

1. We mustn't use a lot of plastic materials.

١. لا يجب علينا أن نستخدم الكثير من المواد البلاستيكية.

2. Plastic materials are very dangerous and damage the environment.

٢. المواد البلاستيكية خطيرة جدًا وتدمر البيئة.

3. We must try to use safe materials like paper and glass.

٣. يجب علينا أن نحاول استخدام مواد آمنة مثل الورق والزجاج.

4. We must keep our planet safe and clean.

٤. يجب علينا أن نحافظ على كوكبنا آمن ونظيف.

## سؤال

كتابة الموضوعات الإنشائية

من الأسئلة الهامة في الورقة الامتحانية

تدرب في

◀ Writing Skill في نهاية كل وحدة.

◀ الموضوعات الإنشائية مجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب.

◀ الموضوعات الإنشائية في ملحق المعاصر.





# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What do you think the most dangerous sea animal is ?

B : It's the (1) .....

A : Where do sharks (2) ..... ?

B : In oceans.

A : What's the turtle ?

B : The turtle is the sea animal that has a hard (3) .....

A : Why is the shell useful to the turtle ?

B : It (4) ..... the turtle.

A : What about the jellyfish ?

B : It is dangerous. It can (5) ..... you when you touch it.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you touch a jellyfish, it ..... you.

- a. stings                      b. jumps on                      c. pleases                      d. grows

2. **WB** A shark uses more than 20,000 ..... in its life.

- a. feet                      b. fins                      c. tails                      d. teeth

3. The ..... is the air, water and land around us.

- a. planet                      b. environment                      c. life                      d. material

4. A/An ..... has eight legs and it can swim fast.

- a. octopus                      b. shark                      c. whale                      d. jellyfish

5. Plastic is ..... , so sea animals and birds die from it.

- a. dead                      b. alive                      c. poisonous                      d. careful

6. The word "recycle" means to .....

- a. use something once                      b. not use something  
c. use something again                      d. never use something

7. The Earth is the ..... where we live.

- a. plant                      b. planet                      c. star                      d. moon

8. When there's a good view, you ..... take a photo.

- a. should                      b. shouldn't                      c. mustn't                      d. have

9. We must ..... our planet. It's important.

- a. save                      b. to save                      c. saving                      d. to saving

10. **SB** We get water if .....

- a. it rain                      b. it will rain                      c. it is rained                      d. it rains

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** I'll feel tired if it's late. ( ..... )

2. **WB** You mustn't look left and right when you cross the road. ( ..... )

3. Pupils mustn't shouted in the classroom. ( ..... )

4. What will happened if it's cold ? ( ..... )

### 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

معاج غننه في نهاية الكتاب

"Sea animals"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



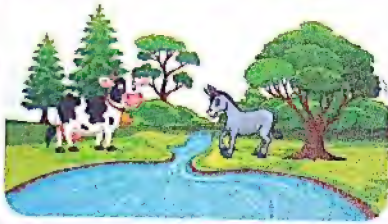


# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

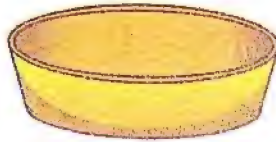
nature reserve (n)

محمية طبيعية



plastic pot (n)

أناء بلاستيكي



a nut (n)

حبة مكسرات



soil (n)

تربة



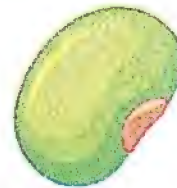
hole (n)

حفرة / ثقب



seed (n)

بذرة



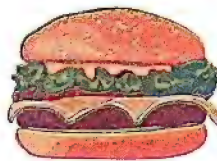
water (ed) (v)

يسقى



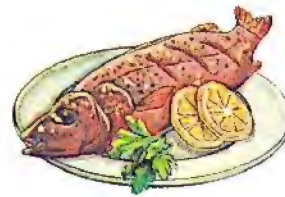
make a sandwich

يصنع ساندويتش



food (n)

طعام



finger (n)

اصبع



ground (n)

أرض



recycled plastic (n)

بلاستيك معاد تدويره





## Key Vocabulary

frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف	instructions (n)	ارشادات/تعليمات
school work (n)	عمل مدرسي	project (n)	مشروع
careful (adj)	حريص		

## Lesson 3

SB pages 48 &amp; 49 WB page 102

visit (ed) (v), (n)	يزور / زيارة	knives (n)	سكاكين
reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات	fishing line (n)	صنارة الصيد
decisions (n)	قرارات	touch (ed) (v)	يلمس
way (n)	طريقة	share (d) (v)	يشارك
rules (n)	قواعد	collaborate (d) (v)	يتعاون
dive (d) (v)	يغطس	collaboration (n)	تعاون
dictionary (n)	قاموس	Ras Mohammed reserve (n)	محمية رأس محمد

## Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

air (n)	هواء	fill (ed) (v)	يملأ
wash (ed) (v)	يغسل	cover (ed) (v)	يغطي
press (ed) (v)	يضغط	space (n)	فراغ
deep (adj)	عميق	hide (v)	يخفي / يختبئ
phone call (n)	مكالمة هاتفية	warm (adj)	دافئ
stones (n)	احجار		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave يترك / يغادر	left	left
find يجد	found	found
throw يرمى / يلقي	threw	thrown
take يأخذ	took	taken
hide يخفي / يختبئ	hid	hidden
give يعطي	gave	given
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
pay يدفع (مال)	paid	paid



## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
hard	لين / أملس
give	يأخذ
careful	مهمل
bad	جيد
empty	مملوء
صلب	soft
يعطى	take
حريص	careless
سيئ	good
فارغ	full

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>fishing line</b>	a thin line used to catch a fish	صنارة الصيد
<b>ground</b>	the top part of the Earth, where we stand	أرض
<b>hole</b>	an empty space in something	فتحة / ثقب
<b>cover</b>	put something over something else to protect or hide it	يغطي / يحمي
<b>seed</b>	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants	بذرة
<b>nature reserve</b>	an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants	محمية طبيعية
<b>pot</b>	a small container	إناء
<b>soil</b>	what plants usually grow in	تربة (زراعية)

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take <b>with</b>	يأخذ مع	press ... into	يضغط في
bad <b>for</b>	سيئ لـ	cover with	يغطي بـ
listen <b>to</b>	يستمع إلى	make a lot of noise	يحدث ضوضاء كثيرة
share ... <b>with</b>	يشارك مع	through the reserve	خلال المحمية الطبيعية
angry <b>with</b>	يغضب من	walk into their homes	يدخلوا منازلهم
agree <b>with</b>	يتفق مع	find their own food	يجدوا طعامهم
<b>at</b> the bottom	في القاع	come <b>from</b>	يأتي من
<b>give</b> instructions about	يعطى تعليمات عن	keep our air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء الصحي
famous <b>for</b>	مشهور بـ	work as a group	يعمل كمجموعة
have a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	give food to	يعطى طعام لـ
think of ways to...	يفكر في طرق لـ ...	pay around	يدفع حوالى / ما يقرب من
fill <b>with</b>	يملئ بـ		



## Collocations

## متلازمات لفظية

make	noise	يحدث ضوضاء	do	activity	يقوم بنشاط
	a decision	يتخذ قرار	take	turns	يتبادل أدوار
	a rule	يصنع قاعدة	play	a sport	يلعب / يمارس رياضة
	a hole	يصنع حفرة		a game	يلعب لعبة
	a phone call	يجري مكالمة هاتفية	go	diving in	يذهب للغطس في
	a sandwich	يصنع ساندويتش			
	something from recycled plastic	يصنع شئ من البلاستيك المعاد تدويره			

## II

## Reading and Listening

## Listening

## • Lesson 3 SB page 48



**Teacher :** We're going to visit this **nature reserve**<sup>(1)</sup> today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here so we must be **careful**<sup>(2)</sup> about what we do.

**First**<sup>(3)</sup>, you mustn't **make a lot of noise**<sup>(4)</sup>! You'll **frighten**<sup>(5)</sup> the animals and birds. **Secondly**<sup>(6)</sup>, we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you?

## Check Vocabulary

(1) محمية طبيعية (2) حريص (3) أولاً (4) يحدث كثيراً من الضوضاء (5) يخيف (6) ثانياً



Now I know we're going to **have a picnic**<sup>(7)</sup> lunch later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

**Next**<sup>(8)</sup>, you must take all your rubbish with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them.

**Finally**<sup>(9)</sup>, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the **project**<sup>(10)</sup>.

#### Check Vocabulary

(7) يذهب في نزهة (8) بعد ذلك (9) أخيرًا (10) مشروع

## Reading

### on Lesson 3 WB page 102

#### Ras Mohammed

Ras Mohammed **reserve**<sup>(1)</sup> is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must **pay around**<sup>(2)</sup> LE 100. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use **knives**<sup>(3)</sup> to cut **fishing lines**<sup>(4)</sup> and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful !



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) محمية (2) يدفع حوالى (3) سكاكين (4) صنارات صيد

# Listening

## Lesson 4 SB page 50

### Plant a tree today !

**Adult :** Do you want to help **save our planet<sup>(1)</sup>** ? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our **air<sup>(2)</sup>** healthy. You can **plant<sup>(3)</sup>** a **nut<sup>(4)</sup>** or the **seed<sup>(5)</sup>** of a fruit.

**Child :** What should I do first ?

**Adult :** First, wash an **empty plastic pot<sup>(6)</sup>** and **dry<sup>(7)</sup>** it. Secondly, put some small **stones<sup>(8)</sup>** at the **bottom of<sup>(9)</sup>** the pot.



**Child :** Then what should I do ?

**Adult :** Then fill the pot with **soil<sup>(10)</sup>**.

**Child :** Like this ?

**Adult :** Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, **press<sup>(11)</sup>** your finger into the soil and make a small **hole<sup>(12)</sup>**.

**Child :** How deep must it be ?

**Adult :** It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a **warm place<sup>(13)</sup>**. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

**Child :** Should I water it now ?

**Adult :** Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted that!"

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) تحافظ على / تنقذ كوكبنا	(2) هواء	(3) يزرع	(4) حبة مكسرات / جوز هند	(5) بذرة	(6) أناء بلاستيك فارغ
(7) يجفف	(8) أحجار	(9) فى قاع	(10) تربة زراعية	(11) يضغط	(12) حفرة/فتحة
				(13) مكان دافئ	



• on Lesson 4 WB page 103

## How to grow a tomato plant

- First, find a sunny place in the garden.
- Second, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.
- Then, make a small hole in the soil.
- Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.
- Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.



• Lesson 4 WB page 103

**Lama** : I'd like to grow<sup>(1)</sup> a tomato plant<sup>(2)</sup>. What should I do first ?

**Mariam** : First, find a sunny place<sup>(3)</sup> in the garden.

**Lama** : Like this ?

**Mariam** : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

**Lama** : OK. What should I do after that ?

**Mariam** : Then, make a small hole in the soil<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Lama** : How deep must it be ?

**Mariam** : About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Lama** : Should I water<sup>(6)</sup> it now ?

**Mariam** : Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed<sup>(7)</sup> in the hole and cover<sup>(8)</sup> it with soil.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) يزرع (2) نبات الطماطم (3) مكان مشمس (4) تربة زراعية (5) جاف (6) يسقي / يروي (7) حبة / بذرة (8) يغطي



## Reading

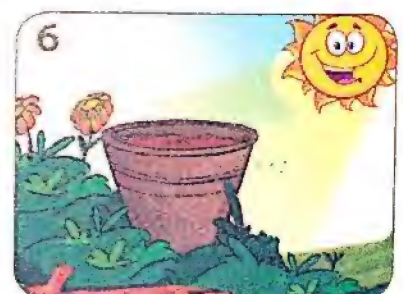
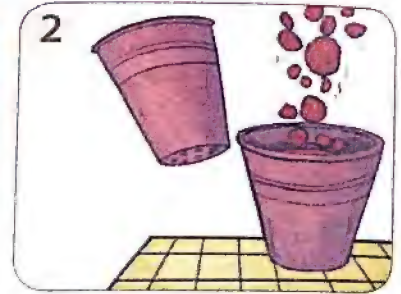
on Lesson 4 SB page 50 .

### Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet ?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to **keep our air healthy**<sup>(1)</sup>. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

1. First, wash the **plastic pot**<sup>(2)</sup> and dry it.
2. Second, put some small **stones**<sup>(3)</sup> **at the bottom**<sup>(4)</sup> of the pot.
3. Then, **fill**<sup>(5)</sup> the pot with soil.
4. Next, **press**<sup>(6)</sup> your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.
5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
7. Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water).
8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) يحافظ على الهواء صحتي (2) إناء بلاستيكي (3) أحجار (4) في قاع (5) يملأ (6) يضغط





## Videoscript

on Lesson 3 WB page 102 •

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat<sup>(1)</sup>, or caracal<sup>(2)</sup> ... to the Nile crocodile<sup>(3)</sup>, there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction<sup>(4)</sup>. This means that every example of the animal will die. The Dorcas gazelle<sup>(5)</sup> lives in the Sinai Peninsula<sup>(6)</sup> and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep<sup>(7)</sup> lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather<sup>(8)</sup> means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern<sup>(9)</sup> and western<sup>(10)</sup> Egypt.

The striped hyena<sup>(11)</sup> looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong<sup>(12)</sup>. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution<sup>(13)</sup> in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations<sup>(14)</sup> that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) القط الصحراوي	(2) الكاركال (حيوان السنور البري)	(3) تمساح نهر النيل	(4) معرض لخطر الانقراض	(5) غزال الدوركاس
(6) شبه جزيرة سيناء	(7) الخروف البربري	(8) الجو الأدفء	(9) جنوبي	(10) غربي
(11) الضبع المخطط	(12) حيوان الأطوم (عجل البحر)	(13) تلوث	(14) منظمات	

# General Notes on Reading and Listening

## 1 reserve

\* reserve (v) = book

ex.: - He reserved two tickets at the cinema.

يحجز

\* reserve (n)

ex.: - You mustn't damage anything in a nature reserve.

محمية (للحيوانات والنباتات)

## 2 share ..... with .....

- Always share your ideas with your friend.

يشارك ..... مع .....

## 3 fill ..... with .....

- Fill the glass with water.

يملى ..... ب .....

## 4 water

\* water (v)

ex.: - Water plants regularly.

يسقى / يروى

\* water (n)

ex.: - Give me a bottle of water.

ماء

## 5 soil - floor

\* soil

ex.: - To grow this plant, you need a good soil.

التربة (التي نزرع فيها النباتات)

\* floor

ex.: - We put a carpet سجادة on the floor.

أرضية (الحجرة)

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Nature ..... protect a lot of animals and birds.

a. preserves

b. resorts

c. reserves

d. deserts



2. Some people like to grow plants in plastic ..... at home to enjoy their view.  
a. water                      b. pots                      c. pans                      d. cotton
3. The ..... is the place where we stand.  
a. hole                      b. planet                      c. earth                      d. ground
4. This area gives a lot of good crops. It has a good .....  
a. soil                      b. desert                      c. earth                      d. land
5. **SB** Press your finger into the soil and make a small ..... about 2 cm deep.  
a. hall                      b. hole                      c. hill                      d. hell
6. When you put a/an ..... into the soil, it grows into a new plant.  
a. brick                      b. seal                      c. seed                      d. egg

## **Exercise** on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** You mustn't ..... a lot of noise in nature reserves.  
a. take                      b. get                      c. do                      d. make
2. You shouldn't walk ..... the animals' homes in order not to frighten them.  
a. from                      b. too                      c. into                      d. for
3. Students wrote ..... their visit to the nature reserve.  
a. on                      b. about                      c. to                      d. from
4. **SB** Can you think ..... ways to help the environment ?  
a. at                      b. on                      c. of                      d. from
5. Pupils are ..... activities and projects about the environment.  
a. making                      b. doing                      c. giving                      d. taking
6. Good students ..... their ideas with each other. They are helpful.  
a. shake                      b. share                      c. wave                      d. clap
7. .... decisions quickly isn't a good habit. You should think well.  
a. Talking                      b. Making                      c. Having                      d. Giving
8. **SB** You shouldn't be angry ..... people you don't agree with.  
a. of                      b. at                      c. with                      d. about

9. **SB** Trees help to ..... our air healthy.  
 a. get                      b. give                      c. keep                      d. save
10. "Earth" is the ..... we live on and we should save it.  
 a. plant                      b. planet                      c. plate                      d. plot
11. Try to keep this plant in a ..... place.  
 a. word                      b. worm                      c. warm                      d. wool
12. Can I ..... a phone call, please ?  
 a. take                      b. bake                      c. make                      d. do

### III Speaking corner

#### 1. Ask and answer questions about a nature reserve

السؤال عن المحمية الطبيعية والإجابة عليها

#### Questions ?

- What is a nature reserve ?

ما هي المحمية الطبيعية ؟

- What do you think people must do in a nature reserve ?

في رأيك ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس في المحمية الطبيعية ؟

- What do you think people mustn't do in a nature reserve ?

في رأيك ماذا يجب ألا يفعل الناس في المحمية الطبيعية ؟

- How can we save our planet ?

كيف يمكننا حماية كوكبنا ؟

#### Answers ✓

- It is an area, smaller than a park for the purpose of preserving certain animals, plants or both.

هي مكان أصغر من الحديقة يستخدم بغرض حماية بعض الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الاثنين معاً.

- They must be careful about what they do.

يجب أن يكونوا حذرين لما يفعلوه.

- They mustn't walk into animals homes.

يجب ألا يدخلوا بيوت الحيوانات.

- They mustn't give food to the animals or birds.

يجب ألا يعطوا طعام للحيوانات أو الطيور.

- We can save our planet by planting trees, nuts and fruits.

يمكننا أن نحمي كوكبنا عن طريق زراعة الأشجار والمكسرات والفواكة.



## Writing

### Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

#### "Nature reserve"

1. We mustn't make much noise in the nature reserve.

١. يجب ألا نحدث الكثير من الضوضاء في المحمية الطبيعية.

2. We mustn't give food to the animals or birds.

٢. يجب ألا نعطي طعام للحيوانات أو للطيور.

3. The animals mustn't eat plastic.

٣. يجب ألا تأكل الحيوانات البلاستيك.

4. We mustn't walk into animals' homes.

٤. يجب ألا ندخل بيوت الحيوانات.

#### "How to plant"

1. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it.

١. أولاً، قم بغسل الإناء البلاستيكي وجففه.

2. Second, fill the pot with soil.

٢. ثانياً، املا الإناء بالتربة (الزراعي).

3. Next, press your finger into the soil and make a hole.

٣. ثم، اضغط بإصبعك في التربة الزراعية واصنع حفرة.

4. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

٤. أزرع البذرة في الحفرة وقم بتغطيتها بالتربة.

5. Water it every day.

٥. اسقيها كل يوم.

6. Don't give it too much water.

٦. لا تقم بإعطائها الكثير من الماء.

### Remember

- استخدم جمل قصيرة.
- استخدم صيغة الأمر.
- اذكر شيء واحد في كل جملة.
- Use short sentences.
- Use the imperative.
- Say one thing in each sentence.
- Use sequencing words to show the order in which the actions or instructions happen : First, Second, Next, etc.
- استخدم كلمات التوالى / التعاقب لتوضح ترتيب الأحداث أو التعليمات باستخدام : أولاً، ثانياً، ثم ...

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We should ..... our planet.  
a. take                      b. make                      c. save                      d. give
2. The Earth is our .....  
a. plant                      b. planet                      c. star                      d. sun
3. .... keep our air healthy.  
a. Trees                      b. Planets                      c. Earth                      d. Sun
4. We can breathe fresh .....  
a. plants                      b. air                      c. Earth                      d. planet

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem : Where did you go yesterday ?

Omar : I went to a nature (1) .....

Kareem : How did you go there ?

Omar : By car.

Kareem : What did you (2) ..... there ?

Omar : I saw a lot of rare (3) ..... and plants.

Kareem : Did you give the animals anything to eat ?

Omar : No. Animals must try to find their (4) .....

Kareem : Why is this place (5) ..... ?

Omar : Because we protect these animals and help them to live there.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you make noise, you'll ..... the animals and birds.  
a. laugh                      b. frighten                      c. keep                      d. save
2. Nature ..... keep our birds, plants and animals safe.  
a. resorts                      b. reserves                      c. services                      d. parks
3. Plants help to keep our air .....  
a. healthy                      b. wealthy                      c. cloudy                      d. dusty



4. That pot is ..... There's nothing in it.  
a. filled      b. dirty      c. empty      d. busy
5. Be careful, there's a ..... in front of you.  
a. hall      b. hole      c. wheel      d. fall
6. **SB** Plant the ..... in a hole and cover it with soil.  
a. pot      b. water      c. seed      d. ground
7. people must take all their ..... with them when they leave the nature reserve.  
a. animals      b. plants      c. birds      d. rubbish
8. He must ..... to other friends' ideas.  
a. listen      b. to listen      c. listening      d. listens
9. **WB** You mustn't ..... why you are doing the activity.  
a. forget      b. forgets      c. to forget      d. forgetting
10. Don't give the seeds too ..... water.  
a. lots      b. many      c. much      d. a lot

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **WB** Should I watered the plants now ? ( ..... )
2. **WB** You should sharing your ideas with others. ( ..... )
3. **SB** What must the birds and animals found ? ( ..... )
4. When you visit a reserve, you must cut the rare flowers. ( ..... )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

“What we must do to keep our animals safe”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

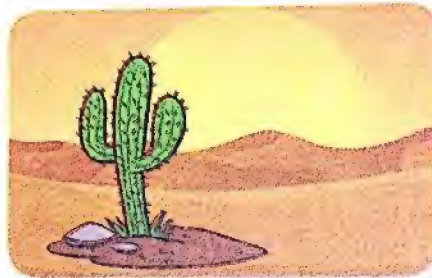
newspaper (n)

جريدة



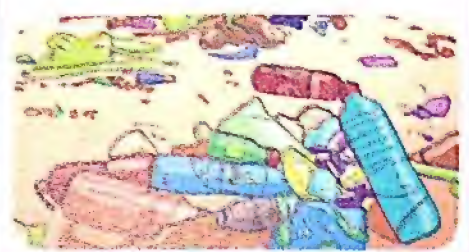
desert (n)

صحراء



plastic rubbish (n)

نفايات بلاستيكية



skeleton (n)

هيكل عظمي



leaflet (n)

منشور - كتيب إرشادي



snack (n)

وجبة خفيفة



gloves (n)

قفازات



headphones (n)

سماعات الرأس



plastic bottle (n)

زجاجة بلاستيكية



poster (n)

ملصق



fisherman (n)

صياد



hand (n)

يد





## Key Vocabulary

respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية
character (n)	شخصية	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
West Beach (n)	الشاطئ الغربي	writer (n)	كاتب / مؤلف
advertisement (n)	إعلان		

## Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

worry (ied) (v)	يقلق	real (adj)	حقيقي
pull (ed) (v)	يسحب / يشد	boat (n)	قارب
the Red Sea (n)	البحر الأحمر	return (ed) (v)	يعود
bones (n)	عظام	brave (adj)	شجاع
illness (n)	مرض	position (n)	موضع / مكان
suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح	main (adj)	رئيسي / أساسي
smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم / ابتسامة		

## Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

afternoon (n)	وقت الظهر	title (n)	عنوان (مقال - مسرحية)
role (n)	دور	information (n)	معلومات
key points (n)	نقاط رئيسية	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص / يوجز
use (d) (v), (n)	يستخدم / استخدام	concluding sentence (n)	جملة ختامية
increase (d) (v)	يزداد / يزيد	details (n)	تفاصيل
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
folded (adj)	مطوى	simple (adj)	بسيط
headings (n)	عناوين (رؤوس الموضوعات)	conclude (d) (v)	يختتم / ينهي
clear goals	أهداف واضحة	comment (n)	تعليق
local (adj)	محلي		

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
feel يشعر	felt	felt
catch يمسك - يصاد	caught	caught
be (am / is / are) يكون	was / were	been
come يأتي	came	come
sleep ينام	slept	slept
teach يدرس / يُعلم	taught	taught
lose يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
brave شجاع	afraid / frightened / coward خائف أو جبان
tiny ضئيل	enormous ضخم
weak ضعيف	strong قوى

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>fisherman</b>	a man who catches fish	صياد (سمك)
<b>respect</b>	show care and admiration for someone	يحترم
<b>skeleton</b>	the bones of the body	هيكل عظمي

## Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel worried يشعر بالقلق	How big the fish was ! كم كانت السمكة كبيرة !
feel weak يشعر بالضعف	pieces of قطع من
at the end of فى نهاية ....	tell about يخبر عن
find a new use for يجد استخدام جديد لـ	I don't feel well today. لا أشعر بتحسّن اليوم.
It took two days استغرق يومان	the bottom of the ocean قاع المحيط
on the beach على الشاطئ	on the ground على الأرض
onto the boat على متن القارب	home to موطن لـ
	study for the test يدرس/يذاكر للإمتحان



for a long time	لمدة طويلة	eat too many sweets	يأكل الكثير من الحلوى
more than ever	أكثر من ذي قبل	for up to (1000 years) ...	يصل إلى أو يقترب من ...
make art with	يزينها / يجعلها زينة	throw rubbish	يلقى القمامة
have a role to play	لديه دور يقوم به	start with	يبدأ بـ
give yourself clear goals	حدد لنفسك أهداف واضحة	dangerous for	خطير على
To conclude .... = In conclusion ....	في الختام / في النهاية	get well	يشفى / يتعافى
learn how to + inf.	يتعلم كيف ...	travel on the bus	يسافر بالأتوبيس
		keep water clean	يحافظ على الماء نظيفاً
		important to + inf.	هام لـ ...

## II Reading and Listening

### Reading

#### • Lesson 5 SB page 51

#### The Old Man and the Sea

By Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old **fisherman**<sup>(1)</sup>. He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85<sup>th</sup> day, he felt a big fish at the end of his **fishing line**<sup>(2)</sup>. But the fish was **stronger than**<sup>(3)</sup> Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the **sharks**<sup>(4)</sup> came. When Santiago **returned to**<sup>(5)</sup> his home on the beach, he had no fish, only **a skeleton**<sup>(6)</sup>. He felt **weak**<sup>(7)</sup> and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was **brave**<sup>(8)</sup> to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now **respected**<sup>(9)</sup> him more than ever.



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) صياد (2) صنارة صيد (3) أقوى من (4) أسماك القرش (5) عاد إلى (6) هيكل عظمي (7) ضعيف (8) شجاع (9) احترم



## • on Lesson 5 WB page 104

When Santiago **woke up**<sup>(1)</sup>, he saw the boy Manolin. Santiago **smiled**<sup>(2)</sup>.

"We must **fish together**<sup>(3)</sup> **next time**<sup>(4)</sup>," said Manolin.

"Yes, but I don't **feel well**<sup>(5)</sup> today", said Santiago.

"You must get well fast because there is so much I can **learn from**<sup>(6)</sup> you," said Manolin.



### Check Vocabulary

(1) يستيقظ (2) ابتسم (3) نصطاد معاً (4) المرة القادمة (5) يشعر بتحسن (6) يتعلم من

## • Lesson 6 SB page 52

### We must clean our beach!

1- Where and when is the **event**<sup>(1)</sup>?

- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. – 5 p.m.

2. What do we need ?

- **rubbish bags**<sup>(2)</sup>, **gloves**<sup>(3)</sup> (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and **snacks**<sup>(4)</sup> to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their **headphones**<sup>(5)</sup>!

3. Why must we clean the beaches ?

- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach.
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4. How can we tell people about our event ?

- **posters**<sup>(6)</sup> (around school and town)
- emails to local groups
- local **radio station**<sup>(7)</sup> or newspaper



### Check Vocabulary

(1) حدث (2) أكياس القمامة (3) قفازات (4) وجبات خفيفة (5) سماعات الرأس (6) ملصقات (7) محطة إذاعية



5. What should we do with the rubbish we find ?

- Recycle it.
- Find a new use for it.
- Make art with it.

**Life Skills**

- Remember that we all have a **role**<sup>(8)</sup> to play in helping the environment.

Give yourself **clear goals**<sup>(9)</sup> on how to do this.



**Check Vocabulary**

دور (8)

أهداف واضحة (9)



**Reading**

on Lesson 6 WB page 105

Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

a. Keeping water clean

1. To conclude, the sea gives us much more than a place to go swimming, so let's not make it dirty!

b. Think before you use plastic material

2. To conclude, we must remember how long plastic rubbish stays in our environment, and we must use different materials when we can.

c. The amazing Red Sea

3. In conclusion, the warm waters are home to everything from tiny jellyfish to very big sharks.



**General Notes on Reading and Listening**

1

\* Santiago felt worried.

Rahma **feels** sad when she sees an orphan. يتيم

لاحظ : أن الفعل feel دائماً يُتبع بصفة.

**2 catch**

- catch fish
- catch a bus / a train / a plane
- catch a ball
- catch a thief
- catch an illness

معاني مختلفة للفعل

- يصطاد سمك
- يلحق بالاتوبيس / القطار / الطائرة
- يمسك الكرة
- يقبض على لص
- يصاب بمرض

**3 beach / coast**

شاطئ (البلاج)

\* beach

**ex.:** - Don't throw plastic bottles on the beach.

ساحل

\* coast

**ex.:** - On the North Coast, there are many tourist villages.**4 role – rule**

دور

\* role (n)

**ex.:** - We all have a role to play in helping the environment.

يحكم / قاعدة

\* rule (v), (n)

**ex.:** - The Romans ruled Egypt a long time ago.  
- All students must obey the school rules.**5 rubbish**

قمامة (تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد)

\* rubbish

**ex.:** - Rubbish is important because it can be recycled.**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ernest Hemingway is the ..... of "The Old Man and the Sea".  
It's a wonderful story.  
a. reader      b. writer      c. baker      d. cooker
- WB** In the museum, we saw a ..... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big!  
a. skeleton      b. sketch      c. length      d. height
- WB** A lot of ..... catch fish from the Red Sea.  
a. teachers      b. fishermen      c. farmers      d. firefighters
- WB** My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all ..... what she says.  
a. delete      b. became      c. respect      d. expect
- SB** We wear ..... to protect our hands.  
a. helmets      b. gloves      c. trousers      d. jackets
- SB** Some people like listening to music on their .....  
a. headphones      b. gloves      c. helmets      d. trousers
- Having a ..... is important if you are hungry.  
a. snake      b. bag      c. role      d. snack



## Exercise on Vocabulary

- Some fishermen feel ..... when they wait for a long time without catching a fish.  
a. happy      b. pleased      c. worried      d. proud
- I enjoy catching fish using my fishing .....  
a. lion      b. tyre      c. line      d. lemon
- SB** It ..... two days for Santiago to pull the fish to the boat.  
a. made      b. went      c. gave      d. took
- The ..... of the big fish is its bones only.  
a. tail      b. skeleton      c. fin      d. head
- SB** Santiago is the ..... character in the story of "The Old Man and the Sea".  
a. mean      b. mine      c. main      d. mile
- SB** One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for ..... to 1,000 years.  
a. down      b. up      c. bottom      d. over
- SB** Remember that we all have a ..... in helping our environment.  
a. role      b. rule      c. door      d. head
- She ran for four hours, so she felt .....  
a. weak      b. false      c. strong      d. afraid
- Reading stories can ..... us lessons for life.  
a. know      b. get      c. learn      d. teach

## III Speaking corner

### Discussing the problem of rubbish :

### مناقشة مشكلة القمامة

#### Questions ?

#### Answers ✓

- Is rubbish a problem in your area ?  
هل القمامة مشكلة في منطقتك ؟

- Yes, it is.

نعم، إنها كذلك.

- What must people do to help ?  
ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس للمساعدة ؟

- They must clean their city.

يجب أن ينظفوا مدينتهم.

## Tips for writing

### 1 Leaflet

منشور (كتاب إرشادي)

A leaflet is a folded paper that has information about something.

It has :

المنشور (أو نشرة التعليمات) هو عبارة عن ورقة مطوية بها معلومات عن شيء ما وأهم ما يميزها أن لها :

1. a short, exciting title. ١. عنوان رئيسي قصير مثير للانتباه.
2. a short, simple introduction. ٢. مقدمة قصيرة وبسيطة.
3. clear headings. ٣. عناوين واضحة.
4. simple sentences. ٤. جمل بسيطة.

### 2 How to conclude a text

كيف تنهي نص مكتوب

1. When you finish writing a text, you use a concluding sentence. ١. عندما ننهي نصًا، نستخدم جملة ختامية.
2. A concluding sentence summarises the key points of your text. ٢. الجملة الختامية تلخص النقاط الرئيسية للنص.
3. Always include a comma after phrases such as "to conclude ..... In conclusion, .....". ٣. دائمًا ضع فاصلة سفلية بعد التعبيرات التي تعبر عن النهاية.

## Stop here !

الجملة الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

1. Santiago was an old fisherman. ١. كان سنتياجو صياد عجوز.
2. He felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line. ٢. شعر بسمكة كبيرة في نهاية صنارته.
3. The fish was stronger than Santiago. ٣. كانت السمكة أقوى من سنتياجو.
4. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was. ٤. رأى الصيادين الآخرين كم كانت السمكة كبيرة.
5. The fishermen now respected him more than ever. ٥. الآن احترمه الصيادين أكثر من ذي قبل.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5,6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Santiago was an old .....  
a. fisherman      b. carpenter      c. sailor      d. farmer
2. Santiago didn't ..... for a long time.  
a. buy fish      b. sell fish      c. catch fish      d. eat fish
3. ...., there was a big fish.  
a. Today      b. Yesterday      c. One day      d. Last week
4. The big fish was ..... his ship.  
a. at the end of      b. in the front of      c. in the middle of      d. at the top of

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... people sometimes do dangerous work.  
a. Quiet      b. Lazy      c. Weak      d. Brave
2. A ..... is the bones of somebody, an animal or a fish.  
a. diagram      b. skeleton      c. body      d. fin
3. **SB** You mustn't swim here. It's .....  
a. safe      b. dangerous      c. interesting      d. boring
4. A ..... is a dangerous sea animal with big teeth.  
a. whale      b. turtle      c. shark      d. snake
5. **SB** It's important to buy a ..... when you travel on the bus.  
a. treck      b. ticket      c. card      d. coin
6. Wear ..... on your hands to keep them warm.  
a. glasses      b. scarfs      c. gloves      d. coats
7. When you return to your home, it means that you ..... to it.  
a. travel from      b. come back      c. go forward      d. leave

- 3** Read and correct the underlined words :

- 4** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

معانيب في نهاية الكتاب

**"A story you like"**

[illegible]





# Review

## on Unit 11

SB page 53

WB page 106

### 1. Vocabulary

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	save	ينقذ
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
octopus	أخطبوط	nut	حبة مكسرات
shark	سمكة القرش	seed	بذرة
sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	soil	تربة (زراعية)
sting	يلسع	instructions	تعليمات
stingray	سمكة الراي اللاسع	stones	أحجار
environment	البيئة	press	يضغط
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	snack	وجبة خفيفة
throw away	يلقي بعيداً	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
rubbish	قمامة	headphones	سماعات الرأس

### 2. Language

#### Zero Conditional

- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية (If) للتعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة.

- If you **heat** water, it **boils**.

- يمكن أن تحل (When) محل (If) في الحالة الصفرية.

- If / When you **mix** red and blue, you **get** purple.

#### Sequencing events :

تعاقب الأحداث :

1. First, ..... أولاً 2. Now, ..... الآن 3. Then, ..... ثم

4. Next, ..... ثانياً 5. After that, ..... بعد ذلك 6. Finally, ..... في النهاية

#### (must, mustn't) :

- استخدام (must/mustn't) للتعبير عن الإلزام.

- You **must** do your homework every day.

- You **mustn't** be late for school.



### 3. Speaking corner

#### 1. Describing a sea animal :

- An octopus can swim fast. It's got eight legs.

#### 2. What must / mustn't you do in/on ..... ?

- What must you do in the classroom ?  
We must be quiet.

### 4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

#### Model Paragraph 1

##### "Sea life"

There are many marine animals in the sea. Some of them have a shell and others have a tail. They can be dangerous to protect themselves. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. The jellyfish is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it. The octopus has got eight legs to help it. It can swim very fast.

#### Model Paragraph 2

##### "Saving our planet"

Our planet is our big home. We must save it. There is a big problem in our environment. The plastic is everywhere. We use it for many different things. The problem is plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We can recycle some plastic, but some of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous. So when birds and sea animals eat it, they die. We must try to use other materials. We mustn't stop trying to help our planet.

#### Model Paragraph 3

##### "Nature reserve"

Nature reserve is an area of land. We have it to help our birds, plants and animals. Many birds, animals and plants live in nature reserves. So it's a very important place. We must be careful when we go there. We mustn't make a lot of noise there as that will frighten the animals and birds. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We mustn't leave our rubbish when we visit the nature reserve.



## 5. Writing Skill

\* معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية :

\* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.



### Study

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) A beach clean-up day	- We must / mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - We should / shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل).
(2) A nature reserve	- Don't + inf. (مصدر الفعل).
(3) Saving the environment	- It's dangerous to + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - It's important to + inf. (مصدر الفعل).
(4) Sea animals	- (حيوان بحري) is my favourite sea animal. - (حيوان بحري) can + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - (شيء لدى الحيوان) has got (حيوان بحري). - (صفة) is (حيوان بحري).



### Try

\* حاول أن تكتب جملة على كل كلمة من الكلمات التالية باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة :

Word	Try to make a sentence
- plant trees	It's important to plant trees.
- octopus	.....
- throw rubbish	.....
- plastic	.....
- recycle	.....



### Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A beach clean-up day"

.....

.....

.....



# Test on unit 11



تنويه

يمكنك حل  
الاختبار إلكترونياً  
وتصويبه

## A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. What is the text about ?  
a. The shark      b. The sea      c. The teeth      d. The shark's life
2. What is the most dangerous sea animal ?  
a. The dolphin      b. The whale      c. The shark      d. The octopus
3. What happens if the shark loses a tooth ?  
a. It loses another one.      b. It uses less teeth.  
c. A new one grows.      d. It loses its life.
4. How many teeth does the shark use in its life ?  
a. 1,000      b. 4,000      c. 20,000      d. 2000

## B. Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

A : How can we keep our air healthy ?

B : We can plant nuts or the seeds of a fruit.

A : (1) ..... can we plant the seeds ?

B : In a plastic (2) .....

A : What should I (3) ..... first ?

B : First, put the soil in the pot and make a hole to put the seed in it.

A : Then, what else can I do ?

B : (4) ..... the hole with soil .

A : Can we (5) ..... it every day ?

B : Ok. But don't give it too much water.

## C. Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic people find on **beaches** is about 100 years old! We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous



when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials – for example paper and glass, because **they** are easier to recycle.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

.....

2. What do you think of plastic objects ?

.....

3. Why do thousands of sea animals and birds die every year ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined word "**beaches**" means .....

- |                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| a. places away from the sea.  | b. places by the sea |
| c. places for plastic objects | d. our environment   |

5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .....

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| a. fishing lines   | b. plastic materials |
| c. paper and glass | d. dolphins          |

6. When something is poisonous, it causes .....

- |                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| a. evaporation    | b. recycling |
| c. animals eat it | d. death     |

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. **SB** If you touch a jellyfish, it ..... you.

- |              |          |           |                |
|--------------|----------|-----------|----------------|
| a. can sting | b. sting | c. stings | d. would sting |
|--------------|----------|-----------|----------------|

2. You must ..... the school rules.

- |              |              |           |             |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| a. to follow | b. following | c. follow | d. followed |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|

3. What ..... to get high marks ?

- |                |                |                |              |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| a. I should do | b. should I do | c. do I should | d. should do |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|

4. **WB** When I'm ....., I go to bed.  
 a. relaxed      b. tired      c. funny      d. hungry
5. "....." means to put something you don't need somewhere.  
 a. Catch      b. Turn to      c. Cut down      d. Throw away
6. Cleaning plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean helps to protect our .....  
 a. moon      b. planet      c. star      d. problem
7. The ..... is the air, water and land on Earth.  
 a. wind      b. environment      c. ocean      d. skeleton
8. You can practise your favourite sport in the sports .....  
 a. road      b. centre      c. barn      d. circle
9. I arrived at work late as the ..... were busy.  
 a. roads      b. ways      c. lines      d. lives
10. A ..... reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected.  
 a. furniture      b. future      c. nature      d. culture

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **WB** You must forget why you are doing the activity. ( ..... )
2. What we should do with the rubbish ? ( ..... )
3. **SB** You mustn't to eat many sweets. ( ..... )
4. I feel tired when it rained. ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

محتاجا عند في نهاية الكتاب

**"Planting a tree"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

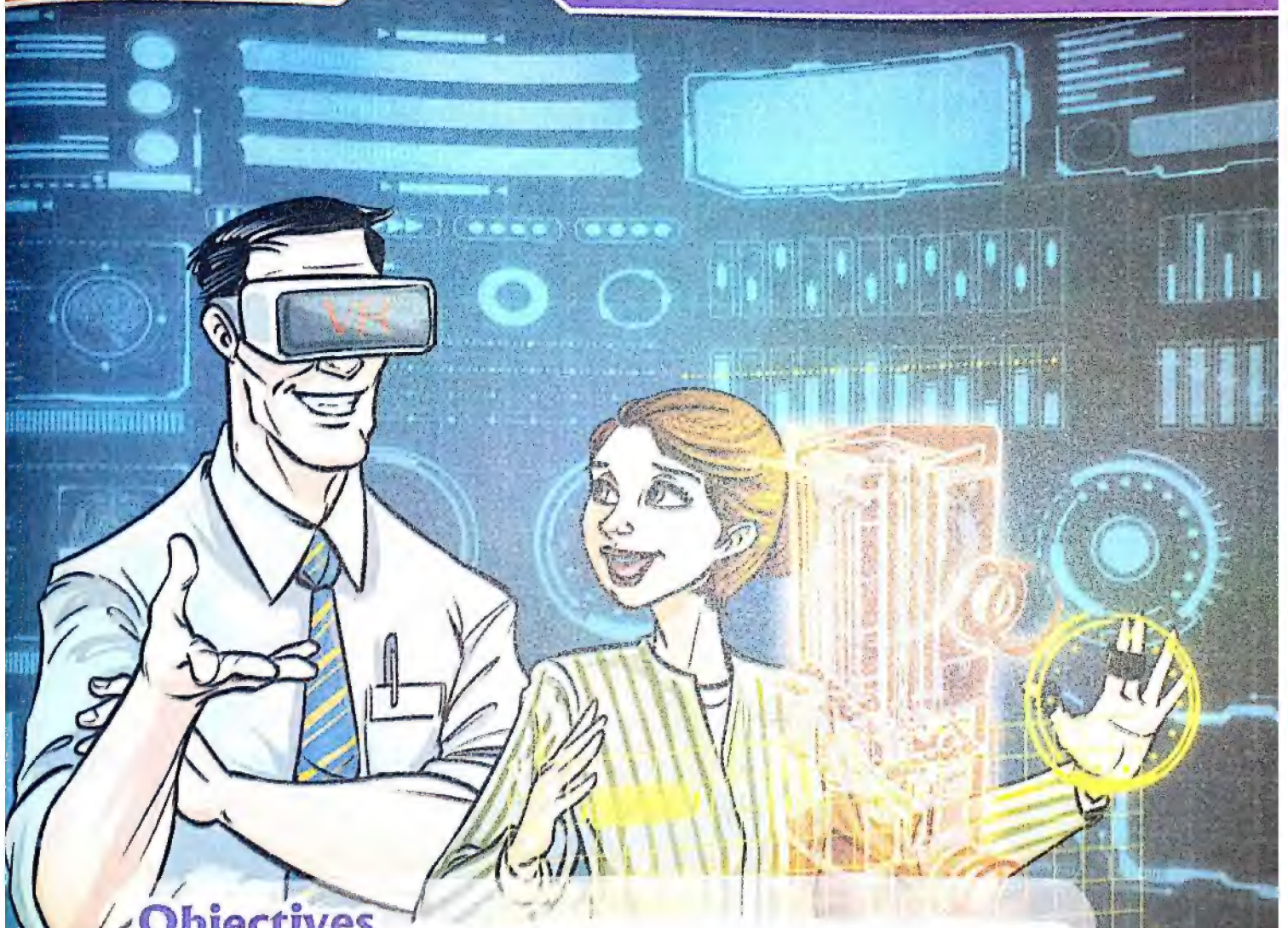
.....



# Unit 12

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 107:113

## My Future



### Objectives

#### • Reading :

An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future

#### • Writing :

A paragraph giving information about the future

#### • Listening :

A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans

#### • Speaking :

Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times

#### • Language :

Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional

#### • Life Skills :

Productivity : set clear goals

- يمكنك استخدام فكرة Time saving  
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب

• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات





## I

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

accountant (n) محاسب



architect مهندس معماري



businessman /  
businesswoman(n)  
رجل أعمال - سيدة أعمال



computer programmer (n)  
مبرمج كمبيوتر



dentist (n) طبيب / طبيبة أسنان



photographer (n)  
مصور فوتوغرافي



engineer (n) مهندس



scientist (n) عالم



writer (n) كاتب



marine biologist (n)  
عالم أحياء بحرية



pilot (n) طيار



teacher (n) معلم / معلمة





## Key Vocabulary

interview (ed) (v),(n) يجرى مقابلة - مقابلة (شخصية)	laboratory (n) عمل تجارى / شركة
research (n) بحث	design (ed) (v) يصمم

## Lesson 1

SB pages 54 &amp; 55 WB page 107

future plans (n) خطط مستقبلية	wheelchair (n) كرسى متحرك
office (n) مكتب	sum (n) مسألة حسابية / مبلغ من المال
meeting (n) اجتماع	traditional (adj) تقليدى
engine (n) محرك	quiz (n) اختبار قصير
machine (n) آلة	study (ied) (v) يذاكر / يدرس
science (n) علوم	photograph (n) صورة فوتوغرافية
African countries (n) الدول الأفريقية	sick (adj) مريض
score (d)(v) يحرز / يسجل	article (n) مقالة
call (ed)(v) يتصل	name (d) (v), (n) يسمى - اسم
goal (n) هدف	voluntary work (n) عمل تطوعى
voluntary (adj) تطوعى	

## Lesson 2

SB pages 56 &amp; 57 WB page 108

person (n) شخص	radio programme (n) برنامج إذاعي
job (n) وظيفة	presenter (n) مقدم برامج
test (ed) (v),(n) يختبر - اختبار	advice (n) نصيحة
dive (d) (v),(n) يغطس / غطسة	decide (d) (v) يقرر
expect (ed) (v) يتوقع	diving (n) رياضة الغطس
voice (n) صوت (بشرى)	results (n) نتائج
Atlantic Ocean المحيط الأطلنطى	terrible (adj) رهيب / فظيع
nurse (n) ممرضة	storm (n) عاصفة
dream (ed) (v),(n) يحلم / حلم	volunteer (ed) (v), (n) يتطوع / متطوع
prefer (red) (v) يفضل	record (ed) (v) يسجل
especially (adv) بصورة خاصة	collect (ed) (v) يجمع

## Famous cities and countries

مدن وبلاد مشهورة

Neweiba (n) مدينة نوبيع	England (n) انجلترا
Thailand (n) تايلاند	Australia (n) استراليا
France (n) فرنسا	

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sell يبيع	sold	sold
teach يعلم	taught	taught
read يقرأ	read	read
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
fly يطير	flew	flown
spend يقضي / يصرف	spent	spent

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
useful مفيد	useless عديم الفائدة
beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح
interesting شيق	boring ممل
different مختلف	similar متشابه

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>an accountant :</b>	is a person who works with money and numbers	محاسب
<b>a businessman / businesswoman :</b>	- is a man or a woman who works in business - a person who works in an office and goes to meetings	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال
<b>a dentist :</b>	is a person who looks after people's teeth	طبيب أسنان
<b>a scientist :</b>	is a person who works with science	عالم
<b>an architect :</b>	is a person who designs buildings	مهندس معماري
<b>an engineer :</b>	is a person who designs or mends machines, engines and designs buildings	مهندس
<b>a pilot :</b>	is a person who flies a plane	طيار
<b>a marine biologist :</b>	is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it	عالم أحياء بحرية
<b>a computer programmer :</b>	is a person who writes computer programmes	مبرمج كمبيوتر
<b>engine :</b>	is a machine that makes something move.	محرك



<b>teacher :</b>	is a person who teaches students.	معلم
<b>machine :</b>	an object, often electric, that can do jobs for us	آلة
<b>meeting :</b>	a time when people who work together can talk about important things	اجتماع
<b>photographer :</b>	a person who takes photographs	مصور فوتوغرافي
<b>writer :</b>	a person who writes books or articles	كاتب
<b>laboratory :</b>	a place where scientists work and do experiments	معمل
<b>test :</b>	check or do a scientific experiment on something	اختبار

### Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work for	يعمل لدى	learn about	يتعلم عن
work with	يتعامل / يعمل مع	that sounds like great advice	
work in	يعمل في	هذه تبدو كنصيحة عظيمة	
I'd like to be	أريد أن أكون... وظيفة	It's not nice to + inf. ...	إنه ليس لطيف منك أن ...
how much money a business gets	كم النقود التي يحصل عليها من العمل التجاري	volunteer for dives	يتطوع للغطس
good at	جيد في	take a long time	يستغرق وقت طويل
on some days	في بعض الأيام	the results of tests	نتائج الاختبارات
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	that's the best thing	هذا أفضل شيء
next door	المنزل المجاور	It's important to + inf. ...	من المهم أن ...
at least	على الأقل	on other days	في الأيام الأخرى
go down	ينخفض / يهبط	hard work	عمل صعب
check information	يدقق في المعلومات	work hard	يعمل بجد
jump high	يقفز لأعلى	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
score a lot of goals	يحرز الكثير من الأهداف	the rest of	الباقى من
take photographs	يلتقط صوراً فوتوغرافية	find out	يكشف
on the phone	على الهاتف	go out in a boat for a dive	يخرج في قارب للغطس
in a wheel chair	يتحرك بكرسي متحرك	You're welcome !	على الرحب والسعة

## Collocations

## متلازمات لفظية

design	buildings	يصمم مبانى
	machines or engines	يصمم الآلات والمحركات
write	books or articles	يكتب كتب أو مقالات
	computer programmes	يبرمج برامج الكمبيوتر
look after	sick people	يعتنى بالمرضى
	people's teeth	يعتنى بأسنان المرضى
do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
	a test	يجرى اختبار
	very well	يؤدي أداءًا حسنًا
speak	French	يتحدث اللغة الفرنسية

## II

## Reading and Listening



## Listening

## on Lesson 1 SB page 54

Narrator 2 : 1

Male : He looks after<sup>(1)</sup> people's teeth. He's a dentist.

Narrator 2 : 2

Male : She studies science<sup>(2)</sup>. She's a scientist.

Narrator 2 : 3

Male : He's a person who designs<sup>(3)</sup> machines<sup>(4)</sup>. He's an engineer.

Narrator 2 : 4

Male : She works with numbers. She finds out how much money a business<sup>(5)</sup> gets. She's an accountant.

Narrator 2 : 5

Male : He takes photos<sup>(6)</sup>. He's a photographer.

Narrator 2 : 6

Male : She works in an office<sup>(7)</sup> and goes to meetings<sup>(8)</sup>. She's a businesswoman.

Narrator 2 : 7

Male : He writes computer programs<sup>(9)</sup>. He's a computer programmer.

Narrator 2 : 8

Male : She writes books or articles<sup>(10)</sup>. She's a writer.

Narrator 2 : 9

Male : She designs buildings<sup>(11)</sup>. She's an architect.

## Check Vocabulary

(1) يعتنى بـ	(2) علوم	(3) يصمم	(4) الآلات	(5) عمل تجارى / شركة	(6) يلتقط صور
(7) مكتب	(8) لقاءات / اجتماعات	(9) برامج كمبيوتر	(10) مقالات	(11) مبانى	





## Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

**Which job from the quiz is she talking about ?**

**Randa** : It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office. You have to **do a lot of sums**<sup>(1)</sup>. I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.

### Check Vocabulary

يحل مسائل حسابية / يتعامل مع المبالغ (1)



## Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

**A Two adult women on a radio programme**<sup>(1)</sup>

**Presenter** : This week, we **interviewed**<sup>(2)</sup> Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist. So, Nesma, what's a marine biologist ?

**Nesma** : A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

**Presenter** : Why did you **decide**<sup>(3)</sup> to become a marine biologist ?

**Nesma** : I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

**Presenter** : What's your day like ?

**Nesma** : In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go **diving**<sup>(4)</sup> around **coral reefs**<sup>(5)</sup>. On other days, I **test**<sup>(6)</sup> water from the ocean in the **laboratory**<sup>(7)</sup>. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, recording the **results**<sup>(8)</sup> of tests.

**Presenter** : What's the best thing about your job ?

**Nesma** : My **research**<sup>(9)</sup> helps to **protect**<sup>(10)</sup> the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our **planet**,<sup>(11)</sup> isn't it ?

**Presenter** : And what's the worst thing ?

**Nesma** : There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the **weather**<sup>(12)</sup> is **terrible**<sup>(13)</sup>. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a **storm**<sup>(14)</sup> !

### Check Vocabulary

(1) برنامج إذاعي	(2) أجرى مقابلة	(3) يقرر	(4) غطس	(5) شعاب مرجانية	(6) يختبر	(7) معمل
(8) نتائج	(9) بحث (علمي)	(10) يحمي	(11) كوكب	(12) طقس	(13) فظيع / رهيب	(14) عاصفة



## Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

### B Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

**Presenter** : You visit some interesting places<sup>(1)</sup>, don't you ?

**Nesma** : Yes, I do ! At the moment<sup>(2)</sup>, I'm working in the Red Sea<sup>(3)</sup>, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand.

**Presenter** : Wow ! And what different kinds of animals do you study ?

**Nesma** : Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.

**Presenter** : It sounds like a dream job<sup>(4)</sup> to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it ?

**Nesma** : No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect<sup>(5)</sup> and record<sup>(6)</sup>. It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.

**Presenter** : What is your advice<sup>(7)</sup> to young people who want to become a marine biologist ?

**Nesma** : Work hard at school, especially in science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist ! And find out everything you can about the job.  
You can even volunteer<sup>(8)</sup> for dives.

**Presenter** : That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

**Nesma** : You're welcome<sup>(9)</sup>.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) أماكن رائعة	(2) في هذه اللحظة	(3) البحر الأحمر	(4) الوظيفة التي يحلم بها	(5) يجمع
(6) يسجل	(7) نصيحة	(8) يتطوع	(9) على الراح والسعة	



## • Lesson 2 SB page 57

**Narrator 2 : 1**

**Male** : You want to be a nurse, don't you ?

**Narrator 2 : 2**

**Male** : It isn't hot today, is it ?

**Narrator 2 : 3**

**Male** : You won't forget to phone me, will you ?

**Narrator 2 : 4**

**Male** : There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there ?

**Narrator 2 : 5**

**Male** : You don't like fish, do you ?

## Reading

### • on Lesson 1 SB page 55

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An **engineer**<sup>(1)</sup> is a person who designs machines and **engines**<sup>(2)</sup>. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day ! My aunt is a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A **businesswoman**<sup>(3)</sup> and a **businessman**<sup>(4)</sup> are people who work in an **office**<sup>(5)</sup> and go to **meetings**<sup>(6)</sup>.

Amir



### Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس	(2) محركات	(3) سيدة أعمال	(4) رجل أعمال	(5) مكتب	(6) اجتماعات / مقابلات
-----------	------------	----------------	---------------	----------	------------------------

• on Lesson 2 SB page 56

## My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory,  
a **marine biologist**<sup>(1)</sup>.

### What's a marine biologist ?

1. A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.



### Why did you decide to become a marine biologist ?

2. I'm **good at**<sup>(2)</sup> science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

### What's your day like ?

3. In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs. On other days, I **test**<sup>(3)</sup> water from the ocean in the laboratory. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the **results**<sup>(4)</sup> of tests.

### What's the best thing about your job ?

4. My **research**<sup>(5)</sup> helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it ?

### And what's the worst thing ?

5. There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the weather is terrible. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a **storm**!<sup>(6)</sup>

### Check Vocabulary

(1) عالم احياء بحرية	(2) جيد في	(3) يختبر	(4) نتائج	(5) بحث علمي	(6) عاصفة
----------------------	------------	-----------	-----------	--------------	-----------





## General Notes on Reading and Listening

### ► advice - advise

\* advice (n) نصيحة (اسم لا يعد)

ex.: My advice to you is to study hard to become a marine biologist.

\* advise (d) (v) ينصح

ex.: I advise you to do a lot of voluntary work in a charity.

### ► work (ed) (v),(n)

يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)

\* work in / for يعمل في / لدى

ex.: I work in / for a big company.

ex.: Henda works for a hotel.

\* work with يتعامل مع

ex.: An accountant works with money and numbers.

\* work on يعمل على تحسين (مهارة - صناعة مثلاً)

ex.: You need to work on writing skills.

### ► 'd like (to + inf.) = want + (to + inf.) يريد أن - يود أن

ex.: I'd like to be an architect. = I want to be an architect.

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

### ◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Heba works in a bank. She is a/an .....  
a. actor      b. accountant      c. teacher      d. nurse
- Ayman's hobby is taking photos. He wants to be a/an .....  
a. dentist      b. businessman      c. engineer      d. photographer
- Amr's uncle is a famous ..... He designs new buildings.  
a. writer      b. architect  
c. dentist      d. computer programmer
- Naguib Mahfouz is a famous ..... He wrote many novels.  
a. programmer      b. businessman      c. writer      d. scientist

5. Dr Zewail was a great ..... . He made many wonderful discoveries **اكتشافات** in science.  
 a. architect      b. dentist      c. writer      d. scientist
6. A ..... is the person who looks after your teeth.  
 a. engineer      b. dentist      c. accountant      d. actor
7. My uncle Ali is a/an ..... . He has many projects and a big company.  
 a. photographer      b. engineer      c. businessman      d. writer
8. I like computer, so much. I hope to work as a/an ..... in the future.  
 a. actor      b. dentist  
 c. computer programmer      d. doctor
9. **SB** An engineer is the person who ..... machines and engines.  
 a. plays      b. acts      c. designs      d. cooks
10. A ..... is a woman who works in an office and goes to meetings.  
 a. dentist      b. businessman  
 c. businesswoman      d. teacher
11. **WB** A/An ..... is a person who flies a plane.  
 a. architect      b. dentist      c. writer      d. pilot
12. Mr Ahmed is a good ..... . He teaches at Al Salam Private School.  
 a. doctor      b. teacher      c. dentist      d. photographer
13. **SB** The person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it is called ..... .  
 a. an engineer      b. a marine biologist  
 c. a dentist      d. a doctor

## **Exercise** on Vocabulary

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** It's really important to ..... after our planet.  
 a. take      b. look      c. make      d. do
2. **WB** Mariam has got the ..... of her test. She did very well !  
 a. reasons      b. results      c. oceans      d. engines



3. **SB** It's not nice to go out in a boat for a ..... when there's a storm.  
 a. diver                      b. driver                      c. ride                      d. dive
4. What subject is Ahmed good ..... ?  
 a. for                      b. in                      c. at                      d. to
5. **WB** He is a good footballer who scores a lot of .....  
 a. goals                      b. goods                      c. guns                      d. boats
6. **WB** He is ..... a wheelchair. He can't walk.  
 a. at                      b. with                      c. in                      d. of
7. **WB** Can you ..... a person who is very good at sport ?  
 a. make                      b. name                      c. do                      d. go

### III Language

#### 1 The Relative pronoun (who)

► We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who) :

يمكننا ربط جملتين فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

- ex. - A businesswoman is a woman. She works in an office.  
 - A businesswoman is a woman **who** works in an office.

#### 2 Question Tag السؤال المذيل

► We use question tags to check information (so we expect people to agree).

نستخدم الأسئلة المذيلة للتحقق من معلومات (لذلك نتوقع ان يوافق الشخص على السؤال).

► The voice goes down at the end of the question tag.

ينخفض الصوت في نهاية السؤال المذيل.

يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتي :

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد ، جملة خبرية

عند وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالاتى :

**positive statement**

جملة خبرية مثبتة

**Negative question tag**

سؤال مزيل منفى

فعل مساعد مثبت + فاعل

? ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفى

ex. - She **is** wearing glasses, **isn't** she ?

- Ashraf **should** study hard, **shouldn't** he ?

**Negative statement**

جملة خبرية منفية

**positive question tag**

سؤال مزيل مثبت

فعل مساعد منفى + فاعل

? ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت

ex. - Your brother **can't** play the guitar, **can** he ?

- Maha **won't** (will not) travel to England, **will** she ?

- أى أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفى أو من النفى إلى الإثبات كالاتى :

**الفعل المساعد المثبت**

have - has - had + P.P

will - should - can - could

**الفعل المساعد المنفى**

haven't - hasn't - hadn't + P.P

won't - shouldn't - can't - couldn't

◀ **لاحظ أن :** (v. to be) سواء كان أساسياً أو مساعداً فى الجملة يستخدم كالتالى :

is - are - was - were

isn't - aren't

wasn't - weren't



٢ عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتي :

السؤال المذيل	الجملة الخبرية
,don't	فعل بدون إضافات (مضارع بسيط)
,doesn't	فعل مضاف إليه ies/es/s (مضارع بسيط)
,didn't	فعل في التصريف الثاني (ماضي بسيط)

٣ ملحوظة : صيغة الفعل المساعد المنفي في السؤال المذيل يجب أن تكون مختصرة (isn't - don't).

- ex. - You **like** shopping, **don't** you ?  
 - Adel **speaks** English well, **doesn't** he ?  
 - She **used** the computer, **didn't** she ?

٣ لاحظ إذا كان (v. to have) فعل أساسي ينفي كالتالي :

have → don't      has → doesn't      had → didn't

- ex. - Nabil **has** a car, **doesn't** he?  
 - We **have** a new flat, **don't** we?

٤ لاحظ أنه إذا وجدت الكلمات التالية يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت لأنها تدل على النفي :

hardly - never - scarcely - seldom - few - little

- ex. We **can hardly** go inside, **can** we ?

٥ تحول (I am) إلى (aren't I) أما (I am not) إلى (am I).

- ex. - I am tall, **aren't** I ?      - I am not short, **am** I ?

٦ عند الإجابة على السؤال المذيل :

- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة تكون الإجابة بـ (Yes).

- ex. - Nada is late, isn't she ? - **Yes**, she is.

- إذا كانت الجملة منفية تكون الإجابة بـ (No).

- ex. - They aren't at home, are they ? - **No**, they aren't.

٧ تملؤ نبرة صوت المتحدث في نهاية السؤال المذيل :

- عند السؤال عن معلومة :

- ex. - Omar doesn't play tennis, does he ?

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** A person ..... takes photographs is called a photographer.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. who                      d. when
2. **SB** An architect is a person ..... designs buildings.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. where
3. **SB** A doctor is a person ..... looks after people's health.  
a. when                      b. who                      c. where                      d. whose
4. It's a nice flat, ..... ?  
a. has it                      b. hasn't it                      c. isn't it                      d. is it
5. **WB** Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ..... ?  
a. doesn't she                      b. does she                      c. is she                      d. isn't she
6. We should always eat healthy snacks, ..... ?  
a. should we                      b. shouldn't you                      c. should you                      d. shouldn't we
7. Our parents are very helpful, ..... ?  
a. are they                      b. they are                      c. they aren't                      d. aren't they
8. The body needs sleep, ..... it ?  
a. isn't                      b. didn't                      c. doesn't                      d. wasn't
9. You can find vitamins in many kinds of food, ..... ?  
a. aren't you                      b. can't you                      c. can you                      d. do you
10. Amal ..... TV, didn't she ?  
a. doesn't watch                      b. watches                      c. watched                      d. didn't watch
11. **WB** Your grandmother doesn't like fish, ..... ?  
a. does she                      b. doesn't she                      c. is she                      d. isn't she
12. **WB** She ..... French, doesn't she ?  
a. speaks                      b. never speaks                      c. doesn't speak                      d. isn't speaking

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** You want to be a nurse, doesn't you ? (.....)
2. **SB** It isn't hot today, does it ? (.....)
3. A nurse is a person when looks after sick people. (.....)
4. **WB** You did your homework last night, don't you ? (.....)



## IV Speaking Corner

وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف Describing and asking questions about jobs.

### Questions

• Who is an architect ?

من هو المهندس المعماري ؟

• Who is a writer ?

من هو الكاتب ؟

• Who is a marine biologist ?

من هو عالم الأحياء المائية ؟

• Who is a dentist ?

من هو طبيب الأسنان ؟

### Answers

- An architect is a person who designs buildings.

هو شخص يقوم بتصميم المباني.

- A writer is a person who writes books or articles.

هو شخص يكتب الكتب والمقالات.

- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

هو شخص يدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات التي توجد به.

- A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth.

هو شخص يقوم بالاعتناء بأسنان المرضى.

## V Writing

### Stop here !

الجميل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

#### «Your dream job»

1. My dream job is to be a marine biologist. ١. وظيفة أحلامي أن أكون عالم أحياء مائية.

2. I want to study the ocean, the plants and animals in it.

٢. أريد أن أدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات الموجودة به.

3. I'm good at science and I love the ocean. ٣. أنا جيد في العلوم وأحب المحيط.

4. I will go diving around coral reefs. ٤. سوف أذهب للغوص حول الشعاب المرجانية.

5. My research will help to protect the plants and animals.

٥. سيساعد بحثي في حماية النباتات والحيوانات.

6. I will test water from the ocean in the laboratory.

٦. سأقوم باختبار مياه المحيط في المعمل.

7. I will do my best to look after our planet. ٧. سأفعل ما بوسعي لاعتنى بكوننا.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مملوك واختار الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A marine biologist studies .....  
a. the ocean      b. fruits      c. vegetables      d. salt
2. There are animals and plants in the .....  
a. park      b. garden      c. ocean      d. lake
3. The ..... in the oceans are beautiful.  
a. snakes      b. animals      c. sailors      d. engineers
4. The text is about a .....  
a. scientist      b. marine animal      c. marine biologist      d. crab

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

- Reham : What's your father's job ?  
Nagham : He is a (1) .....  
Reham : (2) ..... does he work ?  
Nagham : At a preparatory school.  
Reham : What subject does he (3) ..... ?  
Nagham : He teaches English.  
Reham : (4) ..... does he go to school ?  
Nagham : By bus.  
Reham : Why does he go to school by bus ?  
Nagham : Because his school is (5) ..... from our house.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **WB** Mohammed Salah is a footballer who ..... a lot of goals.  
a. teaches      b. scores      c. meets      d. takes
2. **SB** A/An ..... is a person who designs machines and engines.  
a. engineer      b. teacher      c. writer      d. pilot
3. That photo was taken by a clever .....  
a. programmer      b. researcher      c. photographer      d. biologist



4. It's important to ..... plants and animals in oceans.  
a. protect      b. collect      c. damage      d. send
5. .... work with doctors to take care of sick people.  
a. Patients      b. Nurses      c. Architects      d. Writers
6. **WB** I didn't like the book. I thought it was .....  
a. beautiful      b. terrible      c. ocean      d. interesting
7. A : What about the ..... of the tests ?  
B : You've succeeded.  
a. causes      b. reasons      c. marks      d. results
8. You won't catch the bus, ..... ?  
a. do you      b. don't you      c. won't you      d. will you
9. He visits his uncle every Friday, ..... ?  
a. isn't he      b. doesn't he      c. does he      d. is he
10. There weren't any books, ..... ?  
a. were there      b. were they      c. are they      d. are there

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Hatem isn't at home, was he ? ( ..... )
2. Samy and Kamel speak English very well, do they ? ( ..... )
3. She won't travel abroad, would she ? ( ..... )
4. **WB** Girls are quieter than boys, isn't she ? ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

مخاطب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"The job you want"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

apartment (n)

شقة



university (n)

جامعة



children (n)

اطفال



get married (v)

يتزوج



grandparents (n)

أجداد



present (n)

هدية



workshop (n)

ورشة



pottery (n) الأواني الفخارية



adult (n)

بالغ / راشد



market (n)

سوق

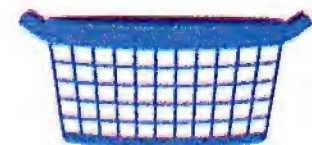


colourful jewellery (n)  
مجوهرات ملونة



basket (n)

سلة





## Key Vocabulary

skill (n)	مهارة	earn (v) (ed)	يكسب / يربح
education (n)	تعليم	study (ied) (v)	يذاكر / يدرس
pass (v) (ed)	يجتاز		

## Lesson 3

SB pages 58 &amp; 59 WB page 109

exam (n)	امتحان / اختبار	action (n)	حدث
subject (n)	مادة دراسية	plastic bottles (n)	زجاجات بلاستيكية
enough (adj)	كاف	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى
life events	أحداث حياتية	countryside (n)	الريف
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
flying (n)	الطيران	player (n)	لاعب
blog (n)	مدونة	practise (d) (v)	يمارس / يتدرب
South Africa (n)	جنوب أفريقيا	probable (adj)	محتمل

## Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

African villages (n)	قرى أفريقية	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
local people (n)	المحليون	ability (n)	قدرة
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	beliefs (n)	معتقدات
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	fully (adv)	تماماً / كلياً
still (adv)	مازال	Africa (n)	قارة أفريقيا
Kenya (n)	دولة كينيا	Fayoum (n)	مدينة الفيوم
culture (n)	ثقافة	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
change (d) (v), (n)	يتغير / تغيير	Ghana (n)	دولة غانا
ring (n)	خاتم	traditional jobs (n)	وظائف تقليدية
clay (n)	صلصال / طين الفخار	modern offices (n)	مكاتب حديثة
extra (adj)	زائد / إضافي		



## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
break يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
buy يشتري	bought	bought
catch يلحق بـ	caught	caught
learn يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
drive يقود	drove	driven
win يفوز	won	won
wear يرتدى	wore	worn

## Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
local محلي	international دولي
modern حديث	traditional تقليدي

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

earn	get money from a job by working	يربح - يكسب
jewellery	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear	مجوهرات
adult	a fully grown person	بالغ / راشد
workshop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a place where people work to create things</li> <li>a room or a small building where people make or repair things.</li> </ul>	ورشة
skill	an ability to do something well	مهارة
culture	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc of a group of people	ثقافة
pottery	pots, dishes, etc made from clay	الأواني الفخارية
apartment	a home that has a number of rooms in a building	شقة
basket	something you can use to carry or hold things	سلة
colorful	with many different colours	ملون
education	the knowledge you get from studying something	تعليم
get married	become husband and wife	يتزوج
Ghana	a country in West Africa	دولة غانا
Kenya	a country in East Africa	دولة كينيا
test	check or do a scientific experiment on something	اختبار
university	a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree	جامعة



## Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

pass the exams	يجتاز الاختبارات	a way for	طريقة لـ ...
have children	لديه أطفال	work hard	يعمل بجد
plans for future	خطط للمستقبل	feel sad	يشعر بالحزن
all over the country	في جميع أنحاء البلاد	move to	ينتقل إلى
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	down the road	اسفل الطريق
catch the bus	يلحق باللاتوبيس	for many years	لعدة سنوات
learn to drive	يتعلم كيف يقود	take the rubbish from	يخرج القمامة من
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	(be) better for	أفضل لـ
come back	يعود	I'd love to	أود أن
repair things	يصلح الأشياء	use modern technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة
earn money	يكسب مائلاً		
be able to	قادر على		

## Collocations

### متلازمات لفظية

a job	يحصل على وظيفة	basket	يصنع سلة
<b>get</b> married	يتزوج	pottery	يصنع أواني فخارية
money	يحصل على مال	jewellery	يصنع مجوهرات
<b>do</b> a job	يؤدي وظيفة	things	يصنع أشياء
		<b>make</b>	

Many verbs become adjectives by adding the suffix (-ful).

بعض الأفعال تصبح صفة عند إضافة النهاية (-ful) لها.

Verb الفعل	Adjective الصفة
colour	colourful ملون
help	helpful متعاون
use	useful مفيد
hope	hopeful متفائل



## II Reading and Listening



### Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 58

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that **education**<sup>(1)</sup> is very important. I **hope**<sup>(2)</sup> that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best **subject**<sup>(3)</sup>.

I don't like flying, so I don't want to **travel around the world**<sup>(4)</sup>. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!



#### Check Vocabulary

(1) التعليم (2) يتمنى (3) مادة دراسية (4) يسافر حول العالم



### Listening

Lesson 3 SB page 59

**Rami and Amira are talking about their plans for the future.**

**Presenter:** Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

**Rami:** I really want to be an **architect**<sup>(1)</sup>. I must go to **university**<sup>(2)</sup> for that so I need to work hard. I won't **pass my exams**<sup>(3)</sup> if I don't work hard! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to **get a job**<sup>(4)</sup> in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to **get married**<sup>(5)</sup> one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I **prefer**<sup>(6)</sup> the **countryside**<sup>(7)</sup>!



**Presenter:** Amira, what about you?

**Amira:** I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a **scientist**<sup>(8)</sup>! It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy **an apartment**<sup>(9)</sup>. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children, but not for a long time!

#### Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس معماري (2) جامعة (3) اجتاز امتحاناتي (4) يحصل على وظيفة (5) أتزوج (6) يفضل (7) الريف (8) عالم (9) شقة سكنية





# Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

## Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in **modern offices**<sup>(1)</sup>, but **traditional jobs**<sup>(2)</sup> and **skills**<sup>(3)</sup> are still important.

1. People started making **pottery**<sup>(4)</sup> thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and **adults**<sup>(5)</sup> can learn this skill.
2. It is traditional to make **jewellery**<sup>(6)</sup> in Kenya. You can see the **colourful**<sup>(7)</sup> jewellery in **markets**<sup>(8)</sup> all over the country. Today, some **local businesses**<sup>(9)</sup> also use **social media**<sup>(10)</sup> and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it **continues**<sup>(11)</sup> an **old tradition**<sup>(12)</sup> and it helps local people to **earn money**<sup>(13)</sup>.
3. It is an important part of **Africa's culture**<sup>(14)</sup> to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell **baskets**<sup>(15)</sup>. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.



### Check Vocabulary

(1) مكاتب حديثة	(2) وظائف تقليدية	(3) مهارات	(4) الأواني الفخارية	(5) البالغين
(6) مجوهرات / حلي	(7) ملون	(8) أسواق	(9) أعمال تجارية محلية	(10) مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
(11) يستمر	(12) تقليد / عادة قديمة	(13) يكسب مال	(14) ثقافة أفريقيا	(15) سلال





## Videoscript

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

What job will you do when you are older ? Will you be an **engineer**<sup>(1)</sup>, who designs exciting new things ? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people ? Or will you be an **architect**<sup>(2)</sup>, who designs new buildings and even cities ? These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the Ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too ? They helped to form the world we know today. Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats. These boats used the wind to help them travel to other parts of the world.

The Ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use **similar ideas**<sup>(3)</sup> to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools. We can see some of them in this picture. The Ancient Egyptians also had **dentists**<sup>(4)</sup>.

In the tenth century, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of **syringe**<sup>(5)</sup>. Today, doctors and scientists use syringes every day.

Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the Pyramid at Saqqara using this **method**<sup>(6)</sup>. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build **columns**<sup>(7)</sup>. These columns made buildings very strong. Before this, the Ancient Egyptians used **mud**<sup>(8)</sup> and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس	(2) مهندس معماري	(3) افكار متشابهة	(4) اطباء أسنان
(5) حقنة	(6) طريقة / وسيلة	(7) أعمدة	(8) طين





## General Notes on Reading and Listening

### 1 pass / succeed

\* pass an exam

يجتاز الامتحان

ex.: - Ashraf **passed** his exams.

\* succeed in an exam

ينجح في امتحان

ex.: - Ashraf **succeeded** in his exams.

### 2 maths + singular verb فعل مفرد

مادة الرياضيات

لاحظ أن مادة الرياضيات تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد أى يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد.

ex.: - Maths is my favourite subject.

### 3 businesses = companies

أعمال تجارية / شركات

ex.: - Today some **businesses** use social media to sell their products.

### 4 earn money = make money

يكسب مال

ex.: - My uncle works hard to **earn money**.

### 5 so that / in order to

بمعنى لكي (التعبير عن الغرض)

**so that + subject + can / could + inf ...** جملة من زمن المضارع/الماضي البسيط

ex.: - I study hard **so that** I **can** succeed.

- I put my books in a book case **so that** they **couldn't** get lost.

\* **in order to + inf. ...**

ex.: - I study hard **in order to** succeed.

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Munir is working hard because he wants to ..... his exams.

a. fail                                      b. pass                                      c. past                                      d. write

2. After finishing my school, I will go to .....

a. kindergarten                                      b. primary school  
c. preparatory school                                      d. university

3. .... is very important for students' life to get good jobs.

a. Pollution                                      b. Education                                      c. Engineering                                      d. Rubbish

4. If I have enough money, I'll buy a/an ..... to live in.  
 a. school                      b. library                      c. apartment                      d. car
5. After finishing my university, I'll ..... married.  
 a. give                      b. make                      c. get                      d. take
6. The skill of making ..... is making pots of clay. It's a traditional craft.  
 a. jewellery                      b. bottles                      c. pottery                      d. poetry
7. **SB** Making jewellery helps some people in Kenya to ..... money.  
 a. win                      b. earn                      c. gain                      d. lose

## **E** xercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When I grow up, I want to work in ..... country.  
 a. other                      b. another                      c. others                      d. both
2. The teacher asked us to talk about our ..... for the future.  
 a. plains                      b. planes                      c. plans                      d. plays
3. **SB** You should ..... hard to pass your exams.  
 a. do                      b. make                      c. work                      d. give
4. I'll get married when I ..... a good job.  
 a. give                      b. make                      c. get                      d. bring
5. .... jewellery is a traditional craft in Kenya.  
 a. Getting                      b. Making                      c. Giving                      d. Doing
6. "International" is the opposite of ".....".  
 a. global                      b. local                      c. manual                      d. African
7. Ghana is an ..... country.  
 a. Asian                      b. American                      c. European                      d. African
8. **SB** Social media and the internet are used by businesses in Kenya to ..... jewellery.  
 a. help                      b. sell                      c. play                      d. make
9. **WB** If you ..... every day, you will speak better English.  
 a. pass                      b. run                      c. practise                      d. still
10. **WB** If you don't run, you won't ..... the bus.  
 a. earn                      b. catch                      c. learn                      d. sell





## Language

## The first conditional clause with "If" (الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ (If))

## Formation التكوين

If + present Simple Tense → , subject + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. مصدر  
 زمن المضارع البسيط      الفاعل

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

عندما تأتي (if) في منتصف الجملة لا نضع (,) بين الجملتين :

Subject + will ('ll) / won't + inf. مصدر if present Simple Tense →  
 الفاعل      زمن المضارع البسيط

ex. Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

## Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل"

## A Yes/No question :

Will + subject + inf. مصدر + if + present Simple Tense... ?  
 الفاعل      زمن المضارع البسيط

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow ?  
 - Yes, I will.      - No, I will not (won't).

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

## B Wh-question :

Question word + will + subj. + inf. مصدر + if + present Simple Tense ?  
 كلمة استفهام      الفاعل      زمن المضارع البسيط

ex. - What will you do if it is windy tomorrow ?  
 - We won't go to the beach.

## Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about what will probably happen if/when another action takes place. We use if or when with the present simple, followed by (will) with a verb without (to).

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى (if) للحديث عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه. وتستخدم **when / if** مع المضارع البسيط متبوعاً بـ (**will**) والفعل بدون (to).

- ex. - If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.  
- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 58 If dad ..... a new job, we'll move to Cairo.  
a. gets                      b. getting                      c. got                      d. get
- 58 Lara ..... to drive if she stays in the city. She 'll use the bus.  
a. learn                      b. learnt                      c. won't learn                      d. learning
- 58 If you go to Fayoum, you will ..... many people making pottery.  
a. saw                      b. see                      c. seen                      d. seeing
- 58 If I go to university, I ..... study maths. It's my best subject.  
a. would                      b. will                      c. wouldn't                      d. won't
- 58 If I ..... enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea.  
a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. have                      d. haven't
- 58 If I don't work hard, I ..... pass my exams.  
a. won't                      b. will                      c. would                      d. could
- 58 If I ..... my grandparents, I'll take them a present.  
a. visits                      b. visited                      c. visiting                      d. visit
- 58 We ..... to university if we don't pass our exams.  
a. go                      b. will go                      c. won't go                      d. went



9. If she drops the glass of milk on the floor, her mom will ..... angry.  
a. be                      b. is                      c. being                      d. been
10. If I ..... married, I'll have a lot of children.  
a. got                      b. get                      c. getting                      d. gets
11. **WB** How ..... when you pass your exams ?  
a. did you feel                      b. will you feel  
c. have you feel                      d. would you feel
12. **WB** ..... you learn to drive if you have a car ?  
a. Did                      b. Will                      c. Have                      d. Would

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **WB** Where will you lived if you get a good job ? ( ..... )
2. If Ali passes his exams, he would go to university. ( ..... )
3. **SB** I'll study maths if I goes to university. ( ..... )
4. If my dad gets home early, I'll being happy. ( ..... )

## IV Speaking corner

### Using critical thinking to discuss traditional jobs.

استخدام التفكير النقدي لمناقشة الحرف التقليدية.

#### Questions ?

- Why is it important to keep traditional jobs ?  
- لماذا من المهم أن تستمر الحرف التقليدية ؟

- How can people use modern technology to help them ?  
- كيف يمكن للناس استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مساعدتهم ؟

#### Answers ✓

- I think because they continue an old tradition and help local people to earn money.  
أعتقد لأنها استمرار لعادة أو تقليد قديم وتساعد المحليين في كسب النقود.

- I think some local businesses use social media and the internet to sell their products "jewellery".  
أعتقد أن بعض الأعمال التجارية المحلية تستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي والانترنت في بيع منتجاتهم (المجوهرات).

## Stop here!

الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

## «Your plan for future»

1. I hope that I will pass my exams. ١. أتمنى أن أجتاز اختباراتي.
2. I will study maths at university. ٢. سوف أدرس الرياضيات في الجامعة.
3. I am going to learn how to drive. ٣. سوف أتعلم كيف أقود.
4. I will buy an apartment near the Red Sea. ٤. سوف أشتري شقة بالقرب من البحر الأحمر.

## «Traditional jobs»

1. In Egypt, people make pottery in their workshops or their own homes. ١. في مصر، يصنع الناس أواني فخارية بورشهم أو بمنازلهم.
2. There are many markets in villages of Fayoum. ٢. يوجد العديد من الأسواق في قرى الفيوم.
3. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world. ٣. يمكن شراء سلال ملونة من غانا في بلدان في جميع أنحاء العالم.
4. Women from small villages make baskets to earn money. ٤. تصنع النساء بالقرى الصغيرة السلال لكسب النقود.
5. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over Kenya. ٥. يمكنك أن ترى المجوهرات الملونة بالأسواق في جميع أنحاء كينيا.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3&4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. What is the important part of Africa's culture ? - Making .....  
a. clothes      b. gloves      c. baskets      d. pots
2. Making baskets is a way to ..... money.  
a. earn      b. lose      c. waste      d. spend
3. What is the African country mentioned in the passage ? .....  
a. Somalia      b. Ghana      c. Egypt      d. Sout Africa
4. There are a lot of ..... who make and sell baskets in Ghana.  
a. boys      b. women      c. men      d. children

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'd like to ..... my exams to go to the university.  
a. get      b. pass      c. succeed      d. cross
2. I learned to ..... a taxi before buying my car.  
a. ride      b. cycle      c. drive      d. dive
3. My brother ..... married and had 3 children last year.  
a. made      b. got      c. took      d. did
4. The word "traditional" means .....  
a. modern      b. very new      c. very few      d. very old
5. **WB** My cousin is a/an ..... now. She was 18 last week.  
a. baby      b. adult      c. skill      d. culture
6. People work hard to ..... money.  
a. sell      b. pay      c. earn      d. send
7. Her favourite piece of ..... is her diamond ring.  
a. jewellery      b. culture      c. furniture      d. paper

8. If I go to the university, I ..... geography.  
 a. would study      b. study      c. am studying      d. 'll study
9. What will you take with you if you ..... your grandfather?  
 a. visit      b. 'll visit      c. visited      d. visits
10. I won't buy a car if I ..... enough money.  
 a. don't have      b. have  
 c. didn't have      d. doesn't have

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** If I eat too many sweets, I'm be fat. ( ..... )
2. **WB** Who do you see if you go out tonight? ( ..... )
3. Would you invite me if you have a party? ( ..... )
4. Will you go to the cinema if it will be a holiday? ( ..... )

### 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your plan for future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



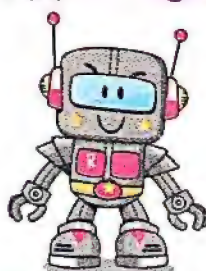


## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

robot (n)

إنسان آلي



mobile phone (n)

تليفون محمول



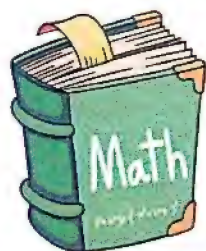
mind map (n)

خريطة ذهنية



maths (n)

مادة الرياضيات



doctor (n)

طبيب



guitar (n)

جيتار



piano (n)

بيانو



countryside (n)

الريف



ticket (n)

تذكرة



electric car سيارة كهربائية



grandchildren (n) أحفاد



injury (n)

إصابة





## Key Vocabulary

app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	illness (n)	مرض
cure (n)	علاج / دواء	electric (adj)	كهربائي
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا	health (n)	صحة

## Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 111

married (adj)	متزوج	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
language (n)	لغة	project (n)	مشروع
writing (n)	كتابة	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
spelling (n)	الهجاء	area (n)	منطقة

## Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 112

disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي	best (adj)	الأفضل
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل	description (n)	وصف
headlines	عناوين رئيسية	text (n)	نص
engineering (n)	الهندسة	exciting (adj)	مثير / شيق
personal information	معلومات شخصية	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
		introduce (d) (v)	يقدم

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave يغادر	left	left
drive يقود	drove	driven
make يصنع	made	made
build يبني	built	built
begin يبدأ	began	begun

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

app

- something that does a particular job on your phone or computer

- something on your phone that helps you to use maps, book tickets, etc.

تطبيق على الهاتف / الكمبيوتر



cure	a treatment that can make an illness better	علاج
illness	being ill	مرض
countryside	the area that is outside a town	الريف

### Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

play	the guitar the piano	يعزف على الجيتار يعزف على البيانو	have a job get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
design	an app a video game	يصمم تطبيق للهاتف يصمم لعبة	in ten years' time	في غضون / خلال عشر سنوات
learn to	dive drive	يتعلم أن يغطس يتعلم أن يقود (سيارة)	learn a new language	يتعلم لغة جديدة
			learn new things	يتعلم أشياء جديدة
(be) / get married		يتزوج	live in	يعيش في مدينة صغيرة يعيش في مدينة كبيرة يعيش في الريف يعيش في شقة كبيرة
I'd like to + inf.		أحب أن ...		
finish my project		أنهي مشروعي		
finish school		ينهي الدراسة		
finish my book		أنهي كتابة كتابي	spend time with ...	يقضي وقتًا مع ...
learn how to revise		يتعلم كيف يراجع	live longer	يعيش لوقتًا أطول
practise reading		يتدرب على القراءة	work on	يعمل على (إنجاز شيء)
revise for the test		يراجع للامتحان	do sports	يمارس ألعاب رياضية
book tickets		يحجز تذاكر	follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة
go on holiday		يذهب في إجازة	make an injury	يصاب بـ
start university		يبدأ دراسة في الجامعة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
make predictions		يتنبأ	introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكار جديدة
find cures for illnesses		يجد علاجات للأمراض	give information about	يعطي معلومات عن
check for any mistakes		يتحقق من أي أخطاء	end with	ينتهي بـ
give some advice		يعطي بعض النصائح	What about later on ?	وماذا عن بعد ذلك / فيما بعد ؟
tell me about		أخبرني عن	do first	يقوم بفعل شيء أولاً

## II

## Reading and Listening



## Listening

## • on Lesson 5 SB page 61

**Presenter** : What are your **plans**<sup>(1)</sup> for the future, Hussein ?

**Hussein** : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to **play the guitar**<sup>(2)</sup>. And before I **leave school**<sup>(3)</sup>, I want to **design a video game**<sup>(4)</sup>!

**Presenter** : Wow! And what about later on ? What will your life be like in ten years' time ?

**Hussein** : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

**Presenter** : Thank you, Hussein.

**Presenter** : Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future ?

**Khadeeja** : Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.

**Presenter** : Tell me about them.

**Khadeeja** : Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new **language**<sup>(5)</sup>. I also want to learn to drive.

**Presenter** : And what will your life be like in 15 years' time ?

**Khadeeja** : That's a long way into the future, isn't it ? Well, in 15 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

**Presenter** : Thanks, Khadeeja.

## Check Vocabulary

(1) خطط (2) يعزف على الجيتار (3) يترك الدراسة (4) يصمم لعبة فيديو (5) لغة





## Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 104

**Dina** : I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of **skills**<sup>(1)</sup> to do that. Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give me some **advice**<sup>(2)</sup>. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor. Before I leave school, I'm going to do **voluntary work**<sup>(3)</sup> at a **children's hospital**<sup>(4)</sup>. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

### Check Vocabulary

(1) مهارات (2) نصيحة (3) عمل تطوعي (4) مستشفى أطفال



## Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 62

My **predictions**<sup>(1)</sup> for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of **changes**<sup>(2)</sup> in our lives.

**Technology**<sup>(3)</sup> will **make our lives easier**<sup>(4)</sup> and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have **apps**<sup>(5)</sup> for everything.

Scientists will find new **cures**<sup>(6)</sup> for **illnesses**<sup>(7)</sup> so people will live longer. Some illnesses will **disappear**<sup>(8)</sup> **completely**<sup>(9)</sup>.

All our cars will be **electric**<sup>(10)</sup>. If this happens, it will be much better for the **air**<sup>(11)</sup> in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. **Robots**<sup>(12)</sup> will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

### Check Vocabulary

(1) تنبؤات	(2) تغيرات	(3) تكنولوجيا	(4) تجعل حياتنا أسهل	(5) تطبيقات	(6) علاجات
(7) أمراض	(8) تختفي	(9) تمامًا	(10) كهربائي	(11) هواء	(12) الإنسان الآلي

## General Notes on Reading and Listening

### 1 application = app

تطبيق

ex.: - My smart phone has got a lot of applications = apps.

### 2 in (ten) years' time

في خلال (عشر) سنوات

ex.: - Basem will buy a car in two years' time.

### 3 revise for (the) test

يراجع لـ (اختبار)

ex.: - Rahma revises for her tests every day.

### 4 a country / the country

\* a country

دولة

- Egypt is a country.

\* the country = countryside

الريف

- The country in Egypt is fantastic.

### 5 cures for

علاجات لـ ...

ex.: - Scientists try to find cures for cancer السرطان.

## Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Apps are examples of new .....  
a. technology    b. engineering    c. environment    d. health
- I think some ..... will disappear completely in the future.  
a. headlines    b. illnesses    c. changes    d. numbers
- Scientists always try to find ..... for illnesses.  
a. predictions    b. changes    c. cures    d. maps
- Modern phones became more easier and important, they have many .....  
a. chargers    b. keys    c. apps    d. screens



5. I think ..... will do many jobs that people do today in the future.  
 a. robots      b. animals      c. birds      d. insects
6. A/An ..... helps sick people to get better.  
 a. businessman      b. teacher      c. doctor      d. accountant

## **Exercise** on Vocabulary

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sara is going to learn to ..... the guitar.  
 a. make      b. play      c. do      d. give
2. Living in the ..... is quieter than living in the city.  
 a. countryside      b. seaside      c. capital      d. hospital
3. **SB** It's important to ..... your time well.  
 a. explain      b. plain      c. plan      d. plant
4. Pupils should ..... well for their exams.  
 a. advise      b. revise      c. replay      d. rewrite
5. Can you ..... predictions about what will happen in the next 30 years ?  
 a. take      b. make      c. do      d. give
6. When things aren't different, it means they are the .....  
 a. some      b. same      c. similar      d. sound
7. **SB** I think there will be a lot of ..... changes in the future.  
 a. boring      b. exciting      c. traditional      d. similar
8. Technology will ..... our lives more interesting.  
 a. do      b. make      c. take      d. like
9. **SB** The pilot is the person who ..... planes.  
 a. designs      b. writes      c. takes      d. flies
10. .... work on ships and travel to many countries all over the world.  
 a. Pilots      b. Sailors      c. Architects      d. Photographers

### III Speaking corner

الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية : Talking about future plans :

subj. (فاعل) + (be) going to + inf.

ex. - Next year, I'm going to design an app .

- العام القادم، سوف أقوم بتصميم تطبيق للهاتف.

subj. (فاعل) + want to + inf.

ex. - Next month, I want to pass my exams .

- الشهر القادم أريد أن أجتاز اختباراتي.

- Before I leave school, I want to learn a new language.

- قبل أن أغادر المدرسة، أريد أن أتعلم لغة جديدة.

subj. (فاعل) + 'd like to + inf.

ex. - In a few years' time, I'd like to improve my skills.

- في خلال سنوات قليلة، أود أن أحسن من مهارتي.

- Before I get a job, I'd like to live in the town.

- قبل حصولي على وظيفة، أحب أن أعيش في المدينة.

أما عند الحديث عن ترتيب خططك المستقبلية أو تنبؤاتك الشخصية لما سيحدث في المستقبل

subj. (فاعل) + will + inf.

ex. - In five years' time, I think I'll be a scientist.

- في غضون خمس سنوات، أعتقد أنني سأصبح عالماً.

- I don't think, I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves.

- لا أعتقد، أنني سوف اضطر إلى تعلم كيفية القيادة لأن السيارات ستكون ذاتية القيادة.



## IV

## Writing

## Writing tips

**When you write your text, remember to :**

**عندما تكتب نص خاص بك تذكر أن :**

- Include an introduction with a topic sentence.  
• اكتب مقدمة باستخدام جملة رئيسية.
- Use First, Second to introduce new ideas.  
• استخدم كلمة First و Second لتقديم أفكار جديدة.
- End with a conclusion.  
• قم بانتهاء النص بخاتمة.
- Read your final text and check for any mistakes. Can you improve it ?  
• اقرأ النص النهائي الخاص بك وتحقق من أي أخطاء. هل يمكنك تحسينه ؟

## Stop here !

**الجمال الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.**

**« Future predictions »**

1. In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.  
١. في الثلاثين عامًا القادمة سيكون هناك الكثير من التغيرات في حياتنا.
2. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting.  
٢. ستجعل التكنولوجيا حياتنا أسهل وأكثر متعة.
3. Our phones will have apps for everything.  
٣. سيصبح هناك تطبيقات لكل شيء على هواتفنا.
4. Scientists will find new cures for illnesses.  
٤. سيجد العلماء علاجات جديدة للأمراض.
5. Some illnesses will disappear completely.  
٥. ستختفي بعض الأمراض كليًا.
6. Our cars will be electric.  
٦. ستصبح جميع سياراتنا كهربائية.
7. I think, there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future.  
٧. أعتقد أنه سوف يوجد الكثير من التغيرات المثيرة في المستقبل.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I've got ..... for the future.  
a. planes      b. plans      c. designs      d. drawings
2. I want to play .....  
a. the guitar      b. the piano      c. the flute      d. the lute
3. I want to ..... a video game.  
a. buy      b. play      c. design      d. make
4. When will you learn to play the guitar ? .....  
a. Next week      b. Next month      c. Next year      d. Tomorrow

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... work is done for free.  
a. Hard      b. Voluntary      c. Active      d. Easy
2. A : What's your ..... for the future ?  
B : I'm going to travel to England.  
a. event      b. time      c. plan      d. end
3. After school, you can get a good .....  
a. work      b. job      c. university      d. hobby
4. I am ..... that life will be better for my family.  
a. helpful      b. hopeful      c. dirty      d. ugly
5. .... will make our lives easier.  
a. Technology      b. Nature      c. Activities      d. Biology
6. .... will do some of the jobs, people do today, and this will be easier and faster.  
a. Rabbits      b. Robots      c. Craftsmen      d. Workers
7. It's quieter to live in the .....  
a. town      b. city      c. countryside      d. city centre



8. He is going ..... a modern house next year.  
 a. design      b. designing      c. to design      d. designs
9. I'll travel abroad in ten .....  
 a. year time      b. years time      c. years' time      d. year's time
10. **WB** If you get up late, you ..... the school bus.  
 a. will catch      b. won't catch      c. wouldn't catch      d. don't catch

**3 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. My best subject is English, is it ? ( ..... )
2. Ameer will buy a car if he got enough money. ( ..... )
3. **WB** In four weeks' time, I go to finish school. ( ..... )
4. **SB** Children will still going to school in the future. ( ..... )

احرص على إقتناء

EL-MONASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية  
للمصف الاول الإعدادي

المراجعة النهائية  
ونماذج الامتحانات

امتحان لغتك لمن يستحق





# Review

## on Unit 12

SB page 63

WB page 113

### 1. Vocabulary

accountant	محاسب	tradition	تقليد / عادة
architect	مهندس معماري	traditional	تقليدي
businessman	رجل أعمال	countryside	الريف
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	education	التعليم
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	predictions	تنبؤات
dentist	طبيب أسنان	plans	خطط
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	cure	علاج / دواء
engineer	مهندس	illnesses	امراض
scientist	عالم	engineering	هندسة
pilot	طيار	electric	كهربائي
writer	كاتب	health	الصحة
marine biologist	عالم أحياء بحرية	sailor	بحار

### 2. Language

#### Question tags :

#### الأسئلة المذيبة :

- \* نستخدم هذا النوع من الأسئلة في نهاية الجمل لتأكيد ما نعرفه أو ما نفكر فيه، فتخضع طبقة (نبرة) الصوت في نهاية الجملة.
- You're in the basketball team, aren't you ? (= I think you're in the team)
- \* عندما يكون الفعل مثبت، نستخدم سؤال مذيّل منفي وعند الإجابة نستخدم الإثبات.
- She's very friendly, isn't she ? - Yes, she is.
- \* عندما يكون الفعل منفي، نستخدم سؤال مذيّل مثبت وعند الإجابة نستخدم النفي.
- We aren't late, are we ? - No, we aren't.
- \* يمكن استخدام السؤال المذيّل للسؤال عن معلومات، فتعلو طبقة الصوت في نهاية الجملة.
- Ashraf doesn't play football, does he ? (= Does he play football ?)



### 3. Speaking

#### Talking about future plans

الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my aunt.

### 4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

#### Model Paragraph 1

##### *"Different jobs"*

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines, engines and designs engines for planes. My sister is a businesswoman. She works in an office and goes to meetings. My brother is a pilot. A pilot is a person who flies a plane. My cousin is a photographer. He takes photos. He likes his job very much. My neighbour is a scientist. A scientist is a person who studies science.

#### Model Paragraph 2

##### *"Marine biologist"*

A marine biologist is a person who studies the plants and animals in the ocean. A marine biologist must be good at science and loves the ocean. The ocean is full of interesting animals and plants. A marine biologist sometimes goes around coral reefs and sometimes tests water from the ocean in the laboratory. This job needs working a lot of time on the computer and writing the results of the tests. His researches help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

#### Model Paragraph 3

##### *"My future plans"*

I have many plans for the future. I'll study hard to pass my exams. I'll do my best to go to university. I'm going to learn to drive and swim for a long distance. I want to get a good job in Egypt. If I have enough money, I'll travel around the world. If I find a nice girl, I'll get married. I want to learn how to play the guitar. I'm going to learn a new language. I'll buy a new car.

## 5. Writing Skills

\* معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية :



### Study

\* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
1. Future plans	- My (فرد من العائلة) is a/an (وظيفة).
2. My father's job	- He / She (s + فعل).
3. Famous jobs	- He / She works in (مكان).
4. My dream job	- I want to be (فرد من العائلة) like my (وظيفة).
	- A/An (وظيفة) is someone who (s + فعل).
	- I'm good at (مادة دراسية).
	- I think this job is (صفة).
	- I'd like to be a/an (وظيفة) one day.
	- I'd like to be a/an (وظيفة) because (سبب).



### Try

\* حاول أن تكتب جملة على كل كلمة من الكلمات التالية باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة :

Helpful Words	Try to make a sentence
- writer	I'd like to be writer one day.
- uncle	.....
- maths	.....
- interesting	.....
- hospital	.....



### Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY 80 words on :  
"Future plans"

.....

.....





# Test on unit 12



تنويه

يمكنك حل  
الاختبار إلكترونياً  
وتصويبه

## A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What's your uncle's job ?  
a. A doctor      b. An engineer      c. A businessman      d. A teacher
- Where does your uncle work ?  
a. In a building      b. In an office      c. In a factory      d. In a school
- What does an engineer design ?  
a. Buildings      b. Machines      c. Engines      d. b & c
- Is an engineer's job interesting ?  
a. Yes, it is.      b. No, it isn't.  
c. I don't know.      d. Not in the text.

## B. Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

- A : What's your job ?  
B : I'm a (1) .....  
A : What does a marine biologist usually study ?  
B : He usually studies the ocean and (2) ..... in it.  
A : (3) ..... do you do every day ?  
B : On some days, I go diving around the coral reefs.  
A : (4) ..... ?  
B : To test water from the ocean in my laboratory.  
A : Is it an (5) ..... work ?  
B : Yes, but sometimes the weather is terrible.

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or at their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults can learn the skill.

It is traditional to make jewellery in Kenya. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over the country. Today, some local businesses also use social media and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition and it helps local people to earn money.

It is an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....

2. What are the countries mentioned in the text ?

.....

3. Do you think hand-made objects are still wanted ? Why / Why not ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....

a. tradition

b. making jewellery

c. Kenya

d. internet

5. The underlined word "earn" means .....

a. buy

b. sell

c. get

d. spend

6. Making pottery, jewellery and baskets are all useful .....

a. parts

b. culture

c. money

d. skills

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Scientists work hard to find new ..... for illnesses.

a. drawings

b. cures

c. methods

d. models

2. Students have to study hard in order to ..... their exams.

a. get

b. pass

c. learn

d. give



3. SB What are your ..... for the future ?  
 a. pans                      b. planets                      c. plants                      d. plans
4. When something is ..... , it's very old.  
 a. clear                      b. modern                      c. traditional                      d. medium
5. I live with my family in a small ..... on the second floor.  
 a. apartment                      b. house                      c. skyscraper                      d. department
6. My cousin goes ..... around the coral reefs.  
 a. riding                      b. cycling                      c. diving                      d. driving
7. A/An ..... is usually good at maths.  
 a. photographer                      b. dentist                      c. accountant                      d. architect
8. They aren't very careful, ..... ?  
 a. are they                      b. they are                      c. aren't they                      d. weren't they
9. Hany and Sameer won't go to the beach, ..... ?  
 a. are they                      b. will he                      c. won't they                      d. will they
10. She'll pass the driving test if she ..... well.  
 a. don't drive                      b. drove                      c. drives                      d. doesn't drive

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB If I pass the exams, I'd go to university. ( ..... )
2. Tomorrow, I think I'd visit my grandpa. ( ..... )
3. You won't arrive late, would you ? ( ..... )
4. WB A businessman is a man which works in an office. ( ..... )

## E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on : "Traditional jobs in Africa"

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

A : There was a film about the dangers<sup>(1)</sup> to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do ?

B : We can help, can't we, Tarek ?

A : How ?

B : If we pick up<sup>(2)</sup> the rubbish<sup>(3)</sup> from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

We must walk or cycle when we can. I always ride my bike to the sports centre<sup>(4)</sup>.

If we have shorter showers<sup>(5)</sup>, we'll save<sup>(6)</sup> water.

You mustn't buy plastic bags. My shopping bag is made of cotton. I use it every day.

A : If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.

B : Thanks Ali ! I'll do all those things !



## Check Vocabulary

(1) مخاطر

(2) يلتقط

(3) قمامة

(4) مركز رياضي

(5) دش قصير (باستخدام مياه أقل)

(6) يحافظ / يوفر





# Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 65 .

**Malak** : Here are the boxes for the recycling project<sup>(1)</sup>.

Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

**Hala** : Great! So which box does this bottle go into ?

**Malak** : What is it made of plastic or glass ?

**Hala** : It's made of plastic.

**Malak** : Ok, it goes into the yellow box.

**Hala** : Right ... There's another bottle here.

This one is made of glass.

**Malak** : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

**Hala** : What about this magazine ? It's made of paper<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Malak** : It goes into the red box.

**Hala** : Where can I put this can ?

**Malak** : If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

**Hala** : Yes, it's made of metal ... I'm putting it in the green box.

**Malak** : What's left ?

**Hala** : Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we ?

It's made of cotton<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Malak** : We're not going to recycle the clothes – but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

**Hala** : The orange box ... OK.

**Malak** : Great. Everything is ready<sup>(4)</sup>. Thanks for your help, Hala.



## Check Vocabulary

(1) مشروع تدوير المخلفات (2) ورق (3) قطن (4) مستعد / جاهز



## Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

In the past, many people had **traditional jobs**<sup>(1)</sup> that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they?

For example, an **aeronautical engineer**<sup>(2)</sup> is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help **future technology**<sup>(3)</sup>, perhaps you will design **drones**<sup>(4)</sup>.

Many people think that drones will carry our **post**<sup>(5)</sup> in the future. That will make the **skies**<sup>(6)</sup> above our cities interesting, won't it?

### Check Vocabulary

(1) وظائف تقليدية (2) مهندس طيران (3) تكنولوجيا المستقبل (4) طائرات بدون طيار (5) البريد (6) سموات



## Listening

on Lesson 2 WB page 114

1 : I'm not sure what this **souvenir**<sup>(1)</sup> made of. Is it plastic or **stone**<sup>(2)</sup>?

2 : OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit **carefully**<sup>(3)</sup>. It should not be too **soft**<sup>(4)</sup>. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do?

Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3 : Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4 : Before I go to **university**<sup>(5)</sup>, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a **charity**<sup>(6)</sup>.



### Check Vocabulary

(1) هدية تذكارية (2) حجر (3) بحرص (4) ناعم (5) جامعة (6) جمعية خيرية



## مراجعة عامة على Unit 10 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
cotton glass leather metal plastic stone wallet roof taps solar panels wind turbines earthquake robot advantages wool tablet bricks oven electric car driverless cars سيارات بدون سائق	<p><b>1- Describing materials :</b></p> <p>What <b>is</b> it / اسم مفرد <b>made of</b> ?  <b>are</b> they / اسم جمع</p> <p>It <b>is</b> made of المادة المصنوع منها الشيء  They <b>are</b> made of</p> <p><b>2- will / won't for predictions :</b>  استخدام will / won't للتنبؤ بما سيحدث في المستقبل بـ :</p> <p>Subj. (فاعل) <b>will</b> + inf.....  <b>won't</b></p> <p>- There <b>will be</b> electric cars in the future.  - We <b>won't use</b> landline telephones.  - <b>Will</b> we <b>live</b> on the moon ?  - Where <b>will</b> you <b>live</b> in the future.</p>	<p>1. Saying what things are made of الحديث عن ما تصنع الأشياء</p> <p>- What is the sofa made of?  - It is made of leather.  - What are the cushions made of?  - They are made of cotton.</p> <p>2. Predicting the future التنبؤ بما سيحدث في المستقبل</p> <p>- I think we will use driverless cars in 2050.  - I disagree. I think we'll all use electric cars.</p>

## مراجعة عامة على Unit 11 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
coral reefs octopus jellyfish stingray turtle whale ocean sting tail planet environment recycle nature reserve frighten rules local soil protect poisonous fisherman skeleton seed respect throw away weak	<p><b>1- Zero conditional (If)</b> الحالة الصفرية (If) تستخدم للحديث عن أشياء ما تكون دائماً صحيحة (حقائق).</p> <p>If / When present simple , present simple مضارع بسيط مضارع بسيط</p> <p>- If it rains, we get water. - When it's late, I feel tired.</p> <p>Present simple if / when present simple</p> <p>- We get water if it rains. - I feel tired when it's late.</p> <p><b>2- must / musn't + inf.</b> مصدر الفعل تستخدم (must) للحديث عن الأشياء التي من الضروري فعلها وتستخدم (mustn't) للحديث عن الأشياء المحظورة فعلها أو غير المسموح بها.</p> <p>- We must save our planet. - We musn't throw rubbish in the ocean.</p> <p><b>3- should / shouldn't + inf</b> مصدر الفعل تستخدم (should / shouldn't) للحديث عن الأشياء من الجيد فعلها أو من الجيد تجنبها.</p> <p>- He should study hard. - He shouldn't be rude to his friends.</p>	<p>Talking about saving the environment. الحديث عن المحافظة على البيئة.</p> <p>- We mustn't throw trash. - We must clean our beaches.</p> <p>Describing sea animals : - The shark is very dangerous. - The stingray is a big, flat fish.</p>



Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
<p>accountant محاسب</p> <p>architect مهندس معمارى</p> <p>businessman رجل أعمال</p> <p>businesswoman سيدة أعمال</p> <p>scientist عالم</p> <p>photographer مصور</p> <p>engines محركات</p> <p>marine biologist عالم أحياء مائية</p> <p>prediction تنبؤ</p> <p>computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر</p> <p>dentist طبيب أسنان</p> <p>writer كاتب</p> <p>engineer مهندس</p> <p>laboratory معمل</p> <p>jewellery مجوهرات</p> <p>colourful ملون</p> <p>illness مرض</p> <p>cure علاج</p> <p>machines آلات</p>	<p><b>1- Relative pronoun who</b> يستخدم ضمير الوصل (who) للربط بين جملتين الفاعل بهما عاقل. - A marine biologist is a person <b>who</b> studies the ocean.</p> <p><b>2- Question tag</b> نوع من الأسئلة يستخدم التأكد من معلومة ويتكون من الفعل المساعد يليه ضمير فاعل ثم علامة الاستفهام (؟). سؤال مذكّل منفي → جملة خبرية مثبتة - It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it? سؤال مذكّل مثبت → جملة خبرية منفية It isn't an easy question, is it?</p> <p><b>3- The first conditional (If)</b> الحالة الأولى (If) تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى (If) للحديث عن النتائج المحتملة لحدث معين. If present simple , will + inf. مضارع بسيط - If I go to university, I'll study maths. - If I don't study hard, I won't pass my exams.</p>	<p>1. Describing and asking questions about jobs. وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف. - Who is an architect? An architect is a person who designs buildings.</p> <p>2. Talking about future plans الحديث عن خطط مستقبلية - Tomorrow, I'm going to play a video game. - Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.</p>



# General Exercises on Units 10, 11 & 12

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان : يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع من ٢٥ كلمة ويجيب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع من نهاية الكتاب)

1. Take rubbish with you when you .....  
 a. travel                      b. arrive                      c. leave                      d. come
2. Rubbish is ..... for animals.  
 a. bad                      b. good                      c. useful                      d. healthy
3. Some animals think that ..... is food.  
 a. cotton                      b. wood                      c. metal                      d. plastic
4. Animals ..... eat rubbish.  
 a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. don't                      d. didn't

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان : يكمل الطالب محادثة بها خمس فراغات.

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Lama** : I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first ?

**Mariam** : First, find a sunny (1) ..... in the garden.

**Lama** : Do you mean a place under the sun ?

**Mariam** : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

**Lama** : Ok. What should I do after that ?

**Mariam** : Then, make a small (2) ..... in the soil.

**Lama** : How deep must it be ?

**Mariam** : About 2cm. Next, put some water in the hole, so it is not too (3) .....

**Lama** : (4) ..... I water it now ?

**Mariam** : Yes, you should. Finally, put the (5) ..... in the hole and cover it with soil.



السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان : عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاثة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

In the past, many people had **traditional** jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't **they** ? For example, an aeronautical engineer is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology, perhaps you will design drones. Many people think that drones will carry our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, won't it ?

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....

2. What's your opinion about traditional jobs ?

.....

3. How will our skies be interesting in the future ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The word "**traditional**" means .....

- a. new                      b. very old                      c. modern                      d. happy

5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .....

- a. drones                      b. teachers                      c. people                      d. jobs

6. A drone is an example of .....

- a. future technology                      b. future houses  
c. past jobs                      d. past houses

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان : يختار الطالب الإجابة الصحيحة من ١٠ جمل (٧ جمل مفردات لغوية + ٣ جمل قواعد لغوية) بها أربع خيارات لكل جملة.

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. **SE** I bought a new pair of shoes made of the best ..... . It is expensive.  
a. cotton                      b. leather                      c. metal                      d. wool
2. A ..... is a machine designed to do things automatically and it is controlled by computer.  
a. robot                      b. turbine                      c. toy                      d. panel
3. A good work needs a good ..... before it starts.  
a. plane                      b. job                      c. plant                      d. plan
4. A ..... has a shell on its back.  
a. whale                      b. stingray                      c. turtle                      d. shark
5. **WB** To ..... is to collect rubbish and make useful things with it in order to use it again.  
a. cycle                      b. recycle                      c. produce                      d. protect
6. We didn't see the dead animal but we saw its ..... .  
a. sketch                      b. skeleton                      c. height                      d. length
7. Scientists ..... materials in the laboratory to know about them.  
a. list                      b. run                      c. test                      d. paste
8. The Ancient Egyptians ..... electricity or televisions.  
a. had                      b. don't have                      c. have                      d. didn't have
9. You ..... follow the rules of school or you'll be punished.  
a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. must
10. **SB** Samy is a photographer ..... takes wonderful photos.  
a. which                      b. what                      c. where                      d. who



**السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان :** يقوم الطالب بتصحيح الكلمات التي تحتها خط في أربع جمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية فقط.

**5 A. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. The houses in many villages are made in bricks. ( ..... )
2. **WB** If it rain , I'll take my umbrella. ( ..... )
3. You will travel to London next week, can't you ? ( ..... )
4. Whose is your father's job ? ( ..... )

**B. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. If we wanted to help environment, we keep it clean. ( ..... )
2. **SB** A marine biologist is a person what studies sea animals. ( ..... )
3. She made a wonderful dress for herself, don't she ? ( ..... )
4. Students should waste their time. ( ..... )

**السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان :** مطلوب من الطالب كتابة موضوع تعبير من ٧٠ : ٨٠ كلمة عن موضوع محدد مرتبط بكتاب الطالب.

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

مجال علمي أو فني

**"Predictions for the future"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

*New  
Hello!*

By a group of supervisors



EL-MOASSER

# *Quick* **Look** *Time Saving*

**1<sup>st</sup>**

Prep.  
2020

SECOND TERM

مفكرة المعاصر  
للصف الأول الإعدادي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



# Part

# 1

# Vocabulary

## Unit 7

### Vocabulary

sports centre	مركز رياضي	pop	موسيقى البوب
haircut	قصة شعر	rock	موسيقى الروك
canteen	كانتين / مقصف	traditional	تقليدي
nervous	عصبي / متوتر	alone	وحيد / منفرد
really	حقاً	coconuts	جوز الهند
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	sailor	بحار
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	sink	يفرق / يغوص
football stadium	إستاد كرة القدم	terrible	فظيع / مزعج
funfair	مدينة ملاهي	nearby	قريب / مجاور
planetarium	مرصد فلكي	jungle	غابة
classical	كلاسيكي	cave	كهف
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	museum	متحف
opera	الأوبرا		

### Definitions

**canteen**

a dining room in an office, a building or a school كانتين

**nervous**

worried or frightened about something عصبي / متوتر

<b>alone</b>	without any other people	وحده / بمفرده
<b>coconuts</b>	large brown nuts	جوز الهند
<b>aquarium</b>	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water	متحف الأحياء المائية
<b>sailor</b>	someone who works on a boat or a ship	بحار
<b>sink</b>	go down into water	يفرق / يغوص
<b>terrible</b>	very bad	مزعج / فظيع

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We decided to play basketball at the sports ..... (WB page 117)  
a. match      b. wheel      c. funfair      d. centre
- We had lunch together in the school ..... (SB page 4)  
a. canteen      b. library      c. laboratory      d. music room
- I had a/an ..... two weeks ago at the barber's. (SB page 3)  
a. hair      b. operation      c. meal      d. haircut
- Yesterday, I went to my new school. I was quite ..... because it was my first day. (SB page 4)  
a. expensive      b. nervous      c. dangerous      d. funny
- The pizza was ..... good. (SB page 9)  
a. terrible      b. well      c. really      d. real
- I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the ..... (WB page 70)  
a. planetarium      b. funfair  
c. garden      d. aquarium
- Let's go on the big wheel at the ..... this weekend. (WB page 70)  
a. funfair      b. museum      c. stadium      d. theatre



8. It was great at the ..... . Egypt won 2-0! (WB page 70)  
a. cinema      b. jungle      c. opera      d. stadium
9. We learnt a lot about the earth and the moon at the ..... .  
a. shop      b. bank (WB page 70)  
c. planetarium      d. aquarium
10. The balls are very heavy at the ..... . (WB page 70)  
a. bowling alley      b. tennis      c. football      d. volleyball
11. I like ....., but it's difficult to open them. (WB page 73)  
a. bananas      b. oranges      c. peaches      d. coconuts
12. My grandfather was a ..... and visited countries all over the world. (WB page 73)  
a. carpenter      b. teacher      c. sailor      d. vet
13. Do you like working with others, or ..... ? (WB page 73)  
a. in a team      b. alone      c. with a group      d. outside
14. When you put a stone in water, it ..... . (WB page 76)  
a. thinks      b. sinks      c. floats      d. thanks
15. I didn't like this story. It was really ..... . (WB page 73)  
a. exciting      b. amazing      c. funny      d. terrible
16. People first played ..... music a long time ago. (WB page 76)  
a. traditional      b. modern      c. new      d. pop
17. .... is a very loud music. (WB page 76)  
a. Classic      b. Rock      c. Pop      d. Opera

## Unit 8

## Vocabulary

further	أبعد (مسافة)	wide	متسع
suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق	beautiful	جميل
sunset	غروب الشمس	treasures	كنوز
column	عمود	valuable	ذو قيمة
city	مدينة	guidebook	كتاب إرشادي
tower	برج	population	تعداد السكان
tunnel	نفق	view	منظر طبيعي
crowded	مزدحم	century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)
empty	فارغ	entrance	مدخل
low	منخفض	deep	عميق
narrow	ضيق	amazing	مدهش
noisy	صاخب	achievement	إنجاز

## definitions

cheap	not expensive	رخيص
wide	measuring something from one side to the other	متسع
safe	not dangerous	آمن
noisy	not quiet	صاخب
deep	measuring water from the top to the bottom	عميق



## Opposites

Word الكلمة	المعكس Opposite
beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح المنظر
expensive غالى الثمن	cheap رخيص
high مرتفع	low منخفض
modern حديث	old قديم
quiet هادئ	noisy صاخب
safe آمن	dangerous خطير
tall طويل	short قصير
full مملوء	empty فارغ

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The Tahya Masr ..... goes over the Nile in Cairo. (WB page 77)  
a. Street      b. Bridge      c. Library      d. High Dam
- The Cairo ..... is the tallest building in Egypt. (WB page 77)  
a. Station      b. Tower      c. Museum      d. Citadel
- Assiut is not a very big ..... (WB page 77)  
a. village      b. country      c. river      d. city
- The Channel ..... goes under the sea between England and France. (WB page 77)  
a. Tunnel      b. Bridge      c. Cave      d. Jungle
- We need to buy some water. This bottle is ..... (WB page 78)  
a. full      b. bright      c. empty      d. expensive
- Be careful, don't hit your head on the door. It's very ..... (WB page 78)  
a. low      b. high      c. noisy      d. cheap
- Only people and bikes can go down that road because it's very ..... (WB page 78)  
a. narrow      b. wide      c. easy      d. big

8. The teacher was angry because all the students were very .....  
 a. tall                      b. happy                      c. quiet                      d. noisy  
 (WB page 78)
9. The market is always very busy at this time. Don't go now or it will be very .....  
 a. free                      b. crowded                      c. empty                      d. open  
 (WB page 78)
10. We can't swim across the river here because it's very .....  
 a. old                      b. short                      c. wide                      d. long  
 (WB page 78)
11. I think the most ..... sport is mountain climbing.  
 a. dangerous                      b. safe                      c. easy                      d. cheap  
 (WB page 79)
12. We want to swim in the river, but how ..... is it?  
 a. much                      b. noisy                      c. deep                      d. old  
 (WB page 83)
13. The hotel looks very nice, but how ..... is it?  
 a. long                      b. much                      c. many                      d. cheap  
 (WB page 83)
14. The children want to go into the jungle, but how ..... is it?  
 a. safe                      b. old                      c. tall                      d. long  
 (WB page 83)
15. Which pyramid is ..... from the centre of Cairo?  
 a. wider                      b. different                      c. further                      d. nearer  
 (SB page 14)
16. .... is the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day.  
 a. Sunset                      b. Sunrise                      c. Sunlight                      d. Sunshine  
 (WB page 122)
17. .... is a tall structure that holds up part of a building.  
 a. Done                      b. Column                      c. Calendar                      d. Aquarium  
 (WB page 122)



## Unit 9

## Vocabulary

diving	رياضة الغوص	snow	ثلج
kayaking	تجديف بالزورق	snowy	ثلجي
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات الجبلية	storm	عاصفة
rock climbing	رياضة تسلق الصخور	stormy	عاصف
trekking	رحلة طويلة شاقة غالباً ما تكون سيراً على الأقدام	fog	ضباب
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء	foggy	مغطى بالضباب
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحلبل	challenge	تحدي
tent	خيمة	railway line	خط السكة الحديد
rain	مطر	sailing	الإبحار
rainy	ممطر	adventure	مغامرة
sun	الشمس	guide	مرشد سياحي
sunny	مشمس	journey	رحلة (طويلة)
cloud	سحابة	plane	طائرة
cloudy	ملبد بالسحب	ship	سفينة
wind	رياح	train	قطار
windy	عاصف / شديد الرياح	frightened	خائف

## Definitions

guide	a person who shows a place to tourists	مرشد سياحي
journey	a long trip from one place to another	رحلة (طويلة)
adventure	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens	مغامرة
tent	something you sleep in when you go camping	خيمة
railway line	the metal that a train travels on	خط سكة حديد
challenge	a difficult task or problem	تحدي

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can't go ..... today because there's no wind. *(WB page 84)*  
 a. climbing      b. windsurfing      c. biking      d. shopping
2. All you need to go ..... is a boat. *(WB page 84)*  
 a. sailing      b. diving      c. climbing      d. trekking
3. I love ..... because I'm good at swimming under the water.  
 a. windsurfing      b. diving *(WB page 84)*  
 c. sailing      d. climbing
4. When you go ..... you start really high, but you finish on the ground. *(WB page 84)*  
 a. swimming      b. riding      c. sailing      d. zip lining
5. We sometimes go ..... for two days or more across the desert.  
 a. diving      b. trekking *(WB page 84)*  
 c. sailing      d. wind surfing
6. We want to have a ..... to show us the market, because they know the best places to shop. *(WB page 85)*  
 a. sailor      b. teacher      c. tourist      d. guide
7. I love waking up in a ..... and hearing the birds sing when I camp. *(WB page 85)*  
 a. tent      b. hotel      c. house      d. museum
8. They took two days to cross the desert. It was a difficult .....  
 a. voyage      b. journey *(WB page 85)*  
 c. flight      d. prize
9. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big .....  
 a. term      b. party *(SB page 24)*  
 c. adventure      d. novel



## Unit 10

## Vocabulary

cotton	قطن	drone	طائرة بدون طيار
glass	زجاج	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
leather	جلد	robot	إنسان آلي
metal	معدن	solar panels	الواح شمسية
plastic	بلاستيك	wind turbine	توربينات الرياح
stone	حجر	cool	منعش / مائل للبرودة
wood	خشب	earthquake	زلازل
wool	صوف	space	فضاء / فراغ
bricks	طوب	warm	دافئ
roof	سطح (مبنى)	circle	دائرة
oven	فرن	rectangle	مستطيل
tap	حنفية	round	دائري
driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	triangle	مثلث
sign	علامة / إشارة	triangular	مثلث الشكل
electricity	كهرباء		

## Definitions

<b>tap</b>	you can turn this to get water	حنفية
<b>roof</b>	this is on the top of a house	سطح
<b>bricks</b>	you can use these to build a wall	طوب
<b>oven</b>	you use this to cook food or bread	فرن
<b>solar panels</b>	we put them on a roof. They produce electricity using the sun	الواح شمسية
<b>electricity</b>	we can use the sun or the wind to produce this	كهرباء

<b>robots</b>	these machines can do many things for us. Some of them can talk إنسان آلي
<b>drone</b>	this machine can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot طائرة بدون طيار
<b>wind turbines</b>	they use the wind to produce electricity توربينات الرياح
<b>electric car</b>	it doesn't use petrol سيارة كهربائية

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A car door is made of ..... . (WB page 93)  
a. glass      b. leather      c. wood      d. metal
- Car windows are made of ..... . (WB page 93)  
a. glass      b. cotton      c. wool      d. leather
- Expensive car seats are made of ..... . (WB page 93)  
a. wood      b. wool      c. leather      d. cotton
- It was hot outside, but it was nice and ..... in my bedroom. (WB page 96)  
a. hot      b. cold      c. rainy      d. cool
- My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have ..... for it in our living room. (WB page 96)  
a. money      b. space      c. free      d. cotton
- My aunt made us some bread and we ate it, it was still ..... . (WB page 96)  
a. wet      b. warm      c. cool      d. cold
- Some houses fell to the ground after the ..... . (WB page 96)  
a. journey      b. earthquake      c. adventure      d. trip



8. .... will do some of the jobs that people do today. (SB page 62)

- a. Animals      b. Birds      c. Robots      d. Rabbits

9. .... is the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and bags. (WB page 121)

- a. Leather      b. Wood      c. Metal      d. Wool

10. In the future, the gardens will be on the ..... (SB page 38)

- a. room      b. tower      c. roof      d. floor

11. Most windows are made of ..... (P.T.)

- a. wool      b. glass      c. cotton      d. paper

## Unit 11

### Vocabulary

coral reef	شعب مرجانية	planet	كوكب
flat	مسطح	recycle	يعيد تدوير
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	rubbish	قمامة
ocean	محيط	throw away	يرمي بعيداً
octopus	أخطبوط	fisherman	صياد سمك
poisonous	سام	respect	يحترم
shark	سمك القرش	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
shell	صدقة - قوقعة	worried	قلق
stingray	سمك الراي الاسع	cover	يغطي
sting	يلسع	ground	أرض
turtle	سلحفاة	hole	فتحة / ثقب
whale	حوت	seed	بذرة
environment	البيئة	soil	تربة
fishing line	صنارة (لصيد السمك)	weak	ضعيف

## Definitions

<b>stingray</b>	it can sting you	سمك الراي الاسع
<b>octopus</b>	it has eight legs	اخطبوط
<b>turtle</b>	it has a hard shell to protect it	سلحفاة
<b>jellyfish</b>	a poisonous sea animal	قنديل البحر
<b>ground</b>	the top part of the earth, where we stand	الأرض
<b>soil</b>	what plants grow in	تربة
<b>hole</b>	an empty space in something	فتحة / ثقب
<b>cover</b>	put something over something else to protect or hide it	يغطي
<b>seed</b>	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants	بذرة

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can ..... them.
- a. recycle                      b. cook (WB page 101)  
c. cycle                         d. bake
2. Trees are very good for our ..... because they give us clean air.
- a. excitement                b. improvement (WB page 101)  
c. environment              d. equipment
3. Earth is one of eight ..... that go around the sun. (WB page 101)
- a. stars                      b. planets                  c. plants                  d. circles
4. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with  
the ..... . (WB page 101)
- a. notebooks                b. books                  c. library                  d. rubbish



5. A lot of ..... catch fish from the Red Sea. (WB page 104)  
a. fishermen    b. doctors    c. policemen    d. soldiers
6. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all ..... what she says. (WB page 104)  
a. cover    b. respect    c. collect    d. recycle
7. Ahmed lost his phone, so his mother was ..... when he didn't phone her. (WB page 104)  
a. weak    b. happy    c. pleased    d. worried
8. Judy felt very ..... after she was ill, but she is better now. (WB page 104)  
a. pleased    b. weak  
c. strong    d. happy
9. In the museum, we saw a ..... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big. (WB page 104)  
a. map    b. plant    c. skeleton    d. line
10. The shark is one of the most dangerous animals in the ..... . (SB page 45)  
a. pond    b. ocean  
c. lake    d. river
11. A ..... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it. (SB page 45)  
a. jellyfish    b. shark    c. turtle    d. whale
12. When a ..... is in danger, it goes into its shell. (SB page 45)  
a. seed    b. coral reef    c. shark    d. turtle
13. If a ..... loses a tooth, it grows a new one. (SB page 45)  
a. turtle    b. shark    c. whale    d. jellyfish
14. You can usually ..... paper, so don't throw it away. (P.T.)  
a. recycle    b. cycle    c. heat    d. hit

## Unit 12

## Vocabulary

accountant	محاسب	ocean	محيط
architect	مهندس معماري	test	اختبار
businessman	رجل أعمال	buy an apartment	يشترى شقة
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	get married	يتزوج
dentist	طبيب أسنان	go to university	يذهب للجامعة
engineer	مهندس	have children	لديه / لديها أطفال
engine	محرك	learn to drive	يتعلم قيادة سيارة
machine	آلة	pass exams	يحتار اختبارات
photographer	مصور	travel	يسافر
scientist	عالم	app	تطبيق (على الهاتف)
writer	كاتب	countryside	الريف
laboratory	معمل علوم	design	يصمم
marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية	cure	علاج
culture	ثقافة	illness	مرض
earn	يربح / يكسب (مال)	pilot	طيار
jewellery	مجوهرات	adult	بالغ
workshop	ورشة	pottery	صناعة الفخار (الخزف)
result	نتيجة	skill	مهارة
terrible	فظيع		



## Definitions

<b>accountant</b>	works with money and numbers	محاسب
<b>businessman / businesswoman</b>	works in business	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال
<b>dentist</b>	looks after people's teeth	طبيب أسنان
<b>scientist</b>	works in science	عالم
<b>architect</b>	designs buildings	مهندس معماري
<b>engineer</b>	designs machines and engines	مهندس
<b>pilot</b>	flies a plane	طيار
<b>earn</b>	get money by working	يربح / يكسب (مأثلاً)
<b>jewellery</b>	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear	مجوهرات
<b>adult</b>	a fully grown person	بالغ (شخص)
<b>workshop</b>	a room or small building where people make or repair things	ورشة
<b>skill</b>	an ability to do something well	مهارة
<b>culture</b>	the art, ideas, beliefs, ... etc. of a group of people	ثقافة
<b>pottery</b>	pots, dishes ... etc. made from clay	الفخار (الخزف)
<b>countryside</b>	an area that's outside a town or a city	الريف

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I didn't like the book. I thought it was ..... (WB page 108)  
 a. funny      b. terrible      c. wonderful      d. exciting
- Mariam got the ..... of her test. She did very well ! (WB page 108)  
 a. turn      b. reason      c. cause      d. result

3. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a/an ..... .
- a. artist                      b. marine biologist (WB page 108)
- c. engineer                  d. teacher
4. A/An ..... is bigger than a sea. (WB page 108)
- a. ocean              b. pond              c. river              d. lake
5. The scientist did a lot of tests in the ..... . (WB page 108)
- a. playground    b. stadium        c. laboratory      d. library
6. You need a lot of ..... to make a beautiful basket. (WB page 110)
- a. necklaces      b. rings            c. skulls            d. skills
7. The shop had a lot of cups, plates and other ..... . (WB page 110)
- a. pottery            b. leather          c. wood             d. straw
8. You can see people making baskets in the ..... down  
the road. (WB page 110)
- a. workshop        b. hospital        c. hotel              d. school
9. My cousin is a/an ..... now. She was 18 last week ! (WB page 110)
- a. baby                b. child            c. adult              d. kid
10. Doctors can usually ..... a lot of money. (WB page 110)
- a. score                b. win              c. pay                d. earn
11. Tourists learn a lot about ancient Egyptian ..... when they  
visit Egypt. (WB page 110)
- a. furniture          b. culture          c. future              d. picture



12. My father bought this ..... for my mother when they got married.

(WB page 110)

- a. sandwich      b. meal      c. food      d. jewellery

13. A/An ..... is something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, ... etc.

(WB page 111)

- a. app      b. map      c. tap      d. tape

14. To ..... is when you draw something that you plan to build or make.

(WB page 111)

- a. cycle      b. recycle      c. design      d. build

# Part 2

## Structures

### Unit 7

#### Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات لمعرفة توقيت حدوث شيء ما في الماضي

in the past	في الماضي	in 1997	في عام ١٩٩٧
yesterday	أمس	in October	في شهر أكتوبر
this morning	هذا الصباح		

last	→ year	السنة الماضية	ago	→	منذ ساعة
	→ month	الشهر الماضي		→	منذ ثلاثة أيام
	→ week	الأسبوع الماضي		→	منذ ستة شهور
	→ Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضي		→	منذ أربع سنوات

an hour	→	منذ ساعة
three days	→	منذ ثلاثة أيام
six months	→	منذ ستة شهور
four years	→	منذ أربع سنوات

#### Examples :

- Yesterday, our family moved to our new house in Alexandria.
- This morning, Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform for me.
- Ziad watched a football match last weekend.

#### Yes / No Questions

السؤال بـ "هل" في زمن الماضي.

#### Questions ?

#### Answers ✓

Did you visit your uncle yesterday ?

- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

Were you at the club last week ?

- Yes, I was.
- No, I wasn't.

Was Mona tired a week ago ?

- Yes, she was.
- No, she wasn't.



## Wh. Questions

السؤال بكلمة استفهام في زمن الماضي

## Questions



## Answers



What did you do at the weekend ?

I visited the zoo.

How long did it take ?

Five hours.

Who came with you ?

My Friends.

## Exercises

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It was my birthday ..... Saturday.

(SB page 3)

a. next

b. ago

c. last

d. in

2. I ..... a haircut two weeks ago.

(SB page 3)

a. have

b. had

c. has

d. have had

3. I ..... bowling last weekend.

(SB page 2)

a. go

b. goes

c. have gone

d. went

4. He ..... the bus to the city last Sunday.

(WB page 71)

a. takes

b. take

c. took

d. has taken

5. They ..... sports centre two weeks ago.

(WB page 71)

a. visited

b. visits

c. had visited

d. visit

6. .... you go to the park ? -Yes, I did.

(SB page 7)

a. Have

b. Did

c. Do

d. Were

7. .... did you go to the museum ? - Four days ago.

(SB page 7)

a. How

b. What

c. When

d. Why

8. .... do you go to school ? -At 7 : 00 a.m

(WB page 72)

a. Where

b. How

c. What time

d. Why

9. .... taller than your brothers and sisters ? (WB page 72)  
 a. Are you      b. Did you      c. Is she      d. Is he
10. .... go shopping last weekend ? (WB page 72)  
 a. Are you      b. Do you      c. Have you      d. Did you

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I ride the big wheel last weekend. (SB page 2) (.....)
2. I went to the museum a week past. (SB page 3) (.....)
3. Yesterday, It were my friend Dalia's birthday.  
 (WB page 71) (.....)
4. Do you go to the park yesterday ? (SB page 7) (.....)
5. Are you speak French ? (WB page 72) (.....)

## Unit

## 8

### Comparative adjectives

### صفات المقارنة

#### Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

الصفة + **er** + **than**

- Toka is **taller** than Rokaya.

#### Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

**more / less** + الصفة + **than**

- Maths is **more difficult** than English.

\* هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تُحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	Comparative	مقارنة بين اثنين
good		better than
bad		worse than

**ex.:-** The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.

- Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
- The weather today is better than yesterday.



## Superlative adjectives

## صفات التفضيل

## Short adjectives القصيرة الصفات

the + الصفة + est

- Salma is the shortest girl in class.

## Long adjectives الطويلة الصفات

the most / the least + الصفة

- Mona is the most beautiful girl in our school.

\* هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تُحفظ كما هي) عند التفضيل :

Adjective	Superlative (التفضيل) مقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين
good	the best
bad	the worst

ex.: - Salwa is the cleverest girl in the class.

- Maths is the most difficult subject.

- Amr Diab is the best singer.

## Exercises

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB My friend lives ..... to the school than me. (page 15)

a. nearest      b. near      c. nearer      d. as near

2. WB Cheese is ..... for you than sweets. (page 78)

a. good      b. as good      c. better      d. best

3. WB I think the blue dress is ..... than the red dress. (page 78)

a. nice      b. nicer      c. nicest      d. the nicest

4. WB The museum is usually ..... crowded on Saturday than on Sunday. (page 78)

a. more      b. many      c. the most      d. most

5. **WB** My cousins felt ..... after they moved to a new flat.  
a. happier                      b. happiest (page 78)  
c. more happier                d. most happiest
6. **SB** Mountain climbing is ..... dangerous sport of all. (page 17)  
a. the                      b. the most                  c. more                      d. less
7. **SB** My sister is the ..... in our family. (page 17)  
a. tallest                  b. tall                      c. taller                      d. as tall
8. **SB** Some people think that maths is the ..... difficult subject. (page 17)  
a. more                      b. less                      c. as                          d. most
9. **WB** Vegetables are the ..... food. (page 79)  
a. healthy                  b. healthier                  c. healthiest                  d. less healthy

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **WB** An elephant is big than a camel. (page 78) ( ..... )
2. **WB** Adel is tall than Rami. (page 78) ( ..... )
3. **SB** Cairo is crowded than Aswan. (page 15) ( ..... )
4. **WB** The local markets are the noisy places. (page 79) ( ..... )
5. **WB** I think going to the museum is the good place for a holiday. (page 79) ( ..... )



## Unit 9

(be) going to :

التعبير عن المستقبل باستخدام

## Formation : التكوين

## 1 Affirmative Statements :

(١) في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

I	→	am	
He, She , It,	أو اسم مفرد غائب	→	is + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
You , We, They,	أو اسم جمع	→	are

ex.: I'm going to go sailing.

ex.: They are going to try zip lining.

## 2 Negative Statements :

(٢) في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل	+	am / is / are	+	not	+	going to	+	(inf.) مصدر الفعل
-------------------	---	---------------	---	-----	---	-------------	---	----------------------

ex.: We aren't going to try windsurfing.

## 3 Interrogative :

(٣) في صيغة الاستفهام :

A) Yes / No questions :

السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are	+	subject الفاعل	+	going to	+	(inf.) مصدر الفعل	+	.....?
---------------	---	-------------------	---	-------------	---	----------------------	---	--------

ex.: Is he going to go kayaking ? - Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

## Key words :

- |                            |     |                                       |                |
|----------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| - tomorrow                 | غدا | - this afternoon                      | في هذه الظهيرة |
| - next (week, year, .....) |     | (الأسبوع القادم، السنة القادمة .....) |                |
| - this evening             |     |                                       | هذا المساء     |

## Reflexive Pronouns

## الضمائر المنعكسة

## Usage : الاستخدام

We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object of a sentence are the same.

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول في الجملة.

Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس
I أنا	myself بنفسي	You أنت/أنت	yourself بنفسك/بنفسك
He هو	himself بنفسه	You أنتم/أنتن	yourselves بأنفسكم/بأنفسكن
She هي	herself بنفسها	We نحن	ourselves بأنفسنا
It هو/هي	itself بنفسه/بنفسها	They هم/هن	themselves بأنفسهم/بأنفسهن
لغير العاقل	لغير العاقل		

Examples : I made myself some salad for lunch.

## Exercises

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** We ..... going to go diving.

(page 23)

a. am                      b. do                      c. are                      d. is

2. **SB** I am going to ..... Sinai.

(page 23)

a. visits                      b. visit                      c. visited                      d. visiting

3. **SB** Is she ..... go trekking this afternoon ?

(page 23)

a. go                      b. going                      c. goes                      d. going to

4. **WB** Who is going to cook your meal ..... ?

(page 84)

a. last week                      b. yesterday                      c. this evening                      d. a week ago



5. **WB** No, I ..... I'm going to walk. (page 84)

- a. am                      b. isn't                      c. am not                      d. aren't

6. **SB** We enjoyed ..... when we went sailing. (page 27)

- a. myself                      b. herself                      c. yourselves                      d. ourselves

7. **SB** Would you like to make ..... a cup of tea ? (page 27)

- a. yourself                      b. itself                      c. ourselves                      d. themselves

8. **SB** He put on a hat to protect ..... (page 27)

- a. himself                      b. herself                      c. themselves                      d. itself

9. **WB** The birds sleep in caves to protect ..... (page 86)

- a. themselves                      b. ourselves                      c. yourselves                      d. itself

10. **WB** My sister and I like taking photos of ..... (page 86)

- a. myself                      b. ourselves                      c. themselves                      d. herself

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words in these sentences :

1. **WB** What are you going to wears tomorrow ? (page 84) ( ..... )

2. **WB** Are you going to do your homework last evening ?  
(page 84) ( ..... )

3. **SB** Ahmed are going to go trekking next year.  
(page 24) ( ..... )

4. **WB** Sara has a jacket to keep myself warm. (page 86) ( ..... )

5. **WB** They made the cake myself. (page 86) ( ..... )

## Unit 10

## Describing materials :

We use **is** or **are** + **made of** to describe the material of an object.

- تستخدم (is / are + made of) لوصف المادة التي صنعت منها الأشياء.

المادة الخام المصنوع منها الشيء + **v. to be + made of** + (المفعول) الشيء المصنوع  
- تستخدم للتعبير عن المادة التي صنع منها شيء وشكل المادة الخام يتغير بعد التصنيع.

- The ball **is made of** plastic.

- The desk **is made of** wood.

## Question :

السؤال عن المادة التي صنعت منها الأشياء :

**What** + **is/are** + **object** + **made of** + **?**  
المفعول

(المفرد) - What **is** the sofa **made of** ?

- It **is made of** leather.

(الجمع) - What **are** the cushions **made of** ?

- They **are made of** cotton.

## Formation : التكوين

المستقبل باستخدام (will) :

## ① Affirmative Statements :

(١) في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

**Subject** + **will** + **(inf.)**  
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

**ex.:** There **will be** electric cars in the future.

## ② Negative Statements :

(٢) في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

**Subject** + **will not / won't** + **(inf.)**  
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

**ex.:** People **won't go** to the beach.

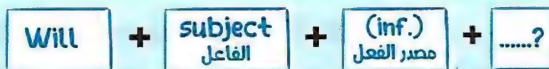


## 3 Interrogative :

(٣) فى صيغة الاستفهام :

A) Yes / No questions :

أ ( السؤال بـ «هل» :



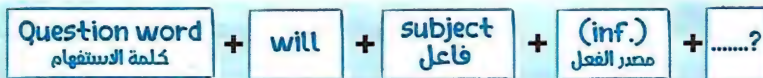
ex.: - Will there be electric cars in the future ?

- Yes, there will.

- No, there won't.

B) Wh-questions :

ب ( السؤال بكلمة استفهام :



ex.: Where will people go on holiday ?

## Exercises

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** The cushions are ..... of cotton. (page 35)

- a. make                      b. made                      c. making                      d. makes

2. **SB** What ..... your bag made of ? (page 35)

- a. are                      b. am                      c. is                      d. were

3. **SB** The table is made ..... wood. (page 32)

- a. of                      b. in                      c. into                      d. on

4. **WB** A car door ..... made of metal. (page 93)

- a. is                      b. were                      c. are                      d. did

5. **WB** Expensive car seats ..... of leather. (page 93)

- a. make                      b. are made                      c. are making                      d. made

6. **SB** We will ..... to the moon in the future. (page 38)  
 a. go                      b. going                      c. gone                      d. goes
7. **SB** ..... there be ordinary mobiles in the future ? (page 38)  
 a. Is                      b. Have                      c. Will                      d. Are
8. **WB** What will they ..... there ? (page 95)  
 a. did                      b. doing                      c. do                      d. does
9. **SB** Will there be electric cars in the future ?  
 - Yes, there ..... . (page 38)  
 a. won't                      b. was                      c. is                      d. will

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** There was be a swimming pool soon. (page 38) ( ..... )
2. **SB** It will been made of wood. (page 38) ( ..... )
3. **SB** No, we will. We will use land telephones. (page 38) ( ..... )
4. **SB** What's your pencil case make of ? (page 35) ( ..... )
5. **WB** They are making of stone. (page 99) ( ..... )

## Unit 11

### 1. Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

**Statement** الجملة الخبرية

If / when مضارع بسيط + عندما مضارع بسيط + إذا

• If / When you boil water, you get steam.

= You get steam if / when you boil water.

تستخدم الحالة الصفرية If للتعبير عن الحقائق.



## 2. Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن

تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

### should

ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح  
بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

Subject + should + inf.  
الفاعل                      المصدر

ex.: Tourists **should** wear sunglasses when it is very sunny.

### shouldn't

لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح  
بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

Subject + shouldn't + inf.  
الفاعل                      المصدر

ex.: You **shouldn't** watch too much TV.

- We **shouldn't** use plastic bags just once.

## 3. must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

We use **must / mustn't + infinitive without "to"** to say that something is important to do or important not to do.

نستخدم ( **must / mustn't** ) عندما نريد أن نقول أن من المهم القيام أو عدم القيام بشيء ما.

ex.: - We **must** save our planet.

## Exercises

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** If you touch a jellyfish, it ..... you. (Page 45)

- a. sting                      b. stings                      c. stung                      d. stinging

2. **SB** The octopus swims away fast ..... it's in danger. (Page 45)

- a. what                      b. where                      c. how                      d. when

3. **WB** When I ..... ill, I go to bed. (Page 100)  
 a. feel                      b. feeling                      c. feels                      d. felt
4. **WB** If my sister ..... a lot of TV, she feels tired. (Page 100)  
 a. watch                      b. watches                      c. watching                      d. watched
5. **WB** If I don't water the plants in our garden, they ..... . (Page 100)  
 a. died                      b. dying                      c. die                      d. dies
6. **SB** We ..... play games on roads. (Page 47)  
 a. must                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. have to
7. **SB** You ..... share your ideas with others. (Page 49)  
 a. can't                      b. should                      c. shouldn't                      d. mustn't
8. **SB** We ..... be angry with people you don't agree with. (Page 49)  
 a. mustn't                      b. must                      c. should                      d. can
9. **WB** When you cross a road, you ..... find a safe place to cross. (Page 101)  
 a. shouldn't                      b. must                      c. mustn't                      d. can't
10. **WB** You mustn't run across the road. You ..... walk. (Page 101)  
 a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. can                      d. must

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **WB** When it be very cold, water turns to ice. (Page 100)  
 ( ..... )
2. **WB** When my grandfather is tired, he went to bed. (Page 100)  
 ( ..... )
3. **SB** We must make a lot of noise. (Page 48)  
 ( ..... )
4. **SB** The animals shouldn't eat plastic. It is very bad for them. (Page 48) ( ..... )
5. **SB** We should use plastic bags just one. (Page 47) ( ..... )



## Unit 12

## 1. The relative pronouns "Who" :

- يستخدم ضمير الوصل who للربط بين جملتين ويحل محل الفاعل العاقل سواء مفرد أو جمع.

who	people	<p>I have a friend. <b>He</b> lives in Cairo. (He → Subject)</p> <p>I have a friend <b>who</b> lives in Cairo.</p> <p>(Who → Relative pronoun)</p>
-----	--------	--

- عند استخدام ضمير الوصل كفاعل يجب استخدام الفعل المناسب.

ex.: - I have a friend **who** lives in Cairo. (The friend lives in Cairo).

- I have friends **who** live in Cairo. (The friends live in Cairo).

## 2. Question Tag :

**We use question tag to check information (so we expect people to agree). The voice goes down at the end of the question.**

السؤال المذيّل :

- هو سؤال قصير مختصر بمعنى « أليس كذلك ؟ » يأتي في نهاية الجملة لتأكيد معناها. وينخفض الصوت في نهاية السؤال.

يتم تكوين السؤال المذيّل كالآتي :

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد + جملة خبرية

(١) عند وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيّل كالآتي :

Positive statement → Negative question tag ?

جملة خبرية مثبتة

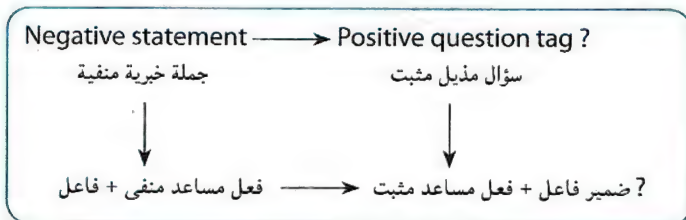
سؤال مذيّل منفي

↓ ↓

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفي → فعل مساعد مثبت + فاعل

### Examples :

- He will write to me when he gets there, won't he?



### Examples :

- You won't forget to phone me, will you ?

- أي أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفي أو من النفي إلى الإثبات كالآتي :

الفعل المساعد المثبت

الفعل المساعد المنفم

will - can

↔

won't - can't

– لاحظ أن (V. To Be) سواء كان فعل أساسيًا أو مساعدًا في الجملة يستخدم كالتالي :

is - are - was - were

isn't - aren't

wasn't - weren't

- لاحظ : وجود never في الجملة يفيد النفي

ex.: - She **never** speaks English, does she ?

## Exercises

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. **SB** A pilot is a person ..... flies a plane.

(Page 55)

a. who

b. where

c. when

d. which

2.  A photographer is a person ..... takes photos.

(Page 55)

a. which

b. whose

c. when

d. who

3. **SB** A teacher is a person ..... teaches students.

(Page 55)

a. which

b. whose

c. who

d. when



4. **WB** Hany is the boy ..... lives next door to me. (Page 107)  
 a. which      b. where      c. who      d. when
5. **WB** My best friend is a person ..... is very good at sport. (Page 107)  
 a. where      b. which      c. when      d. who
6. **WB** She wants to be a marine biologist, ..... she ? (Page 108)  
 a. does      b. isn't      c. don't      d. doesn't
7. **WB** Your name is Nawal, ..... it ? (Page 108)  
 a. aren't      b. isn't      c. can't      d. is
8. **WB** There weren't many people at the match, ..... there ? (Page 108)  
 a. weren't      b. aren't      c. were      d. is
9. **SB** You don't like fish, ..... you ? (Page 57)  
 a. don't      b. does      c. have      d. do
10. **SB** You won't forget to phone me, ..... you ? (Page 57)  
 a. will      b. are      c. can      d. do

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **WB** Mohamed Salah is a footballer when scores a lot of goals. (Page 107) ( ..... )
2. **WB** Mr Gamal is the teacher where teaches us maths. (Page 107) ( ..... )
3. **WB** It is cold in England, is it ? (Page 108) ( ..... )
4. **WB** Your grandfather lived in a big city, doesn't he ? (Page 108) ( ..... )
5. **WB** She never speaks French, doesn't she ? (Page 108) ( ..... )

# Part 3

## Language Functions

### Unit 7

#### Speaking

##### 1. Talking about your weekend.

التحدث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

##### Questions



- How was your weekend ?  
كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟
- What happened ?  
ماذا حدث ؟

##### Answers



- It was terrible. كانت سيئة.
- I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.  
أسقطت هاتفي الجوال وكسر.
- It was great. كانت رائعة.
- I went to the theatre and enjoyed a wonderful play.  
ذهبت إلى المسرح واستمتعت بمسرحية رائعة.

##### 2. Discussing types of music.

الحديث عن أنواع الموسيقى.

##### Questions



- What type of music do you like ?  
ما نوع الموسيقى التي تحبها ؟
- Do you like (نوع الموسيقى) music ?  
هل تحب (نوع) الموسيقى ؟
- When did you learn to play the piano / drum ... ?  
متى تعلمت عزف البيانو / الطبل ... ؟

##### Answers



- Traditional / Classical / Pop / Jazz / Rock  
الموسيقى التقليدية / الكلاسيكية / البوب / الجاز / الروك.
- Yes, I do. نعم أحبها
- No, I don't. لا، لا أحبها
- At (time) ...  
في (وقت) ...
- When I was .....  
عندما كنت .....



## Unit

## Speaking

## 1. Talking about measurements.

التحدث عن وحدات القياس.

## Questions



• What do you know about the old Egyptian Museum ?

ماذا تعرف عن المتحف المصري القديم ؟

• How old is the Luxor Temple ?

كم عمر معبد الأقصر ؟

• How wide is the road ?

كم اتساع الطريق ؟

• Which house has the most / least people ?

أى منزل لديه العدد الأكثر / الأقل من الأشخاص ؟

## Answers



- It opened in 1835.

- تم افتتاحه عام ١٨٣٥.

- There were more than 160.000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures.

- كان يوجد به أكثر من ١٦٠.٠٠٠ من أكثر الكنوز القيمة في مصر.

- It didn't have space for 100.000 other objects.

- لم يكن به مكان (مساحة) لـ ١٠٠.٠٠٠ شيء آخر.

- It's (number) .

- يبلغ عمره (رقم) سنوات.

- It's (number) meters wide.

- يبلغ (رقم) متر.

- It's ..... .

- إنه منزل ..... .

## Use "just under", "more than" &amp; "about" :

1. The Cairo Alexandria desert road is ..... (رقم) km long.

2. Abraj Al-Bait clock Tower in Saudi Arabia is ..... (رقم) m.

3. The Luxor Temple is just under ..... (رقم) years old.

## 2. Making comparisons.

### Questions ?

1. Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid ?

أى هرم هو الأطول، الهرم الأكبر أم الهرم الأحمر ؟

2. Which museum is bigger, the Egyptian museum or the Grand Egyptian museum ?

أى متحف هو الأكبر، المتحف المصري أم المتحف المصري الكبير ؟

3. What do you know about the Grand Egyptian museum ?

ماذا تعرف عن المتحف المصري الكبير ؟

4. Why do you think we have museum ?

لماذا تعتقد أننا لدينا متحف ؟

5. Which one is the quietest, the Valley of the King, the Karnak Temple or Habu Temple ?

أيهما الأكثر هدوءاً، وادي الملوك،

معبد الكرنك أم معبد حابو ؟

### Answers ✓

- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.

- أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة هو الأطول.

- I think Grand Egyptian museum is bigger.

- أعتقد أن المتحف المصري الكبير هو الأكبر.

- I know it has more space for valuable objects.

- أعرف أن به مساحة أكبر للأشياء القيمة.

- I think to save and protect valuable objects and treasures.

- أعتقد أنه لحفظ وحماية الأشياء القيمة والكنوز.

- In my opinion, Habu Temple is the quietest place.

- في رأيي أنه معبد حابو هو الأكثر هدوءاً.



## Unit 9

## Speaking

## 1. Discussing activities and travel plans.

مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر.

## Questions ?

• What are you going to do this weekend ?

ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟

• Are you going to try rock climbing ?

هل ستجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور ؟

## Answers ✓

- I am going to visit Sinai.

- سأزور سيناء.

- Yes, I am.

- No, I am not.

## 2. Describing the weather.

وصف حالة الطقس.

## Questions ?

• What is the weather like now ?

• How is the weather now ?

كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم ؟

• How was the weather yesterday ?

كيف كان الطقس بالأمس ؟

• How will the weather be tomorrow ?

كيف سيكون الطقس غدا ؟

## Answers ✓

- There is fog, the weather is foggy.

- يوجد ضباب، الطقس ضبابي.

- The weather was sunny.

- كان الطقس مشمساً.

- The weather will be windy tomorrow.

- سيكون الطقس عاصف غداً.

### 3. Making suggestions and responding. تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها.

Making suggestions : الاقتراح :	Accepting : الموافقة :	Refusing : الرفض :
<p>- What shall we do ..... tomorrow ? ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل غدًا ؟</p> <p>- How / What about ..... ? inf. + ing / noun ماذا عن ..... ؟</p> <p>- Shall we ..... ? هل بإمكاننا ..... ؟</p> <p>- Why don't we ..... ? لما لا ..... ؟</p>	<p>- Good idea. فكرة جيدة.</p> <p>- I like ..... too. أنا أحب ..... أيضًا.</p> <p>- I know! Let's ..... أنا أعرف! هيا بنا ..... .</p>	<p>- I don't know. I'm not very good at ..... أنا لا أعرف. أنا غير جيد في ..... .</p> <p>- I'm not sure that sounds a bit scary. أنا غير متأكد. هذا يبدو مخيف قليلاً.</p> <p>- I disagree. أنا لا أوافق.</p> <p>- I'd prefer ..... أفضل أن ..... .</p> <p>- I'd rather ..... أفضل أن ..... .</p>

## Unit

10

### Speaking

#### 1. Asking and answering questions about what things are made of :

السؤال والإجابة عن المواد التي تصنع منها الأشياء :

#### Questions



- What's your pencil case made of ?  
ما صنعت مقلمتك ؟
- What are the curtains made of ?  
ما صنعت الستائر ؟

#### Answers



- It's made of plastic.  
صنعت من البلاستيك.
- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton.  
أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها صنعت من القماش.



• What is a car made of ?  
ما صنعت السيارة ؟

- That's a difficult question !  
It's made of a lot of things,  
for example .....

- إنه سؤال صعب ! لقد صنعت من أشياء  
كثيرة على سبيل المثال .....

• What materials will the house  
be made of ?  
ما المواد التي سوف يُصنع منها المنزل ؟

- It will be made of plastic.  
سوف يُصنع من البلاستيك.

## 2. Talking about predictions for the future. التحدث عن تنبؤات في المستقبل.

- The houses will be a bit different to our (houses) today.

- ستصبح المنازل مختلفة قليلاً عن المنازل اليوم.

- I think we'll need more (gardens) in the future.

- أعتقد أننا سنحتاج (حدائق) أكثر في المستقبل.

- The (gardens) will be on the roofs in the future.

- الحدائق ستكون في الأسطح في المستقبل.

- People will use (electric cars) in the future.

- سيستخدم الناس السيارات الكهربائية في المستقبل.

## 3. Saying years.

كيف نقول السنوات.

\* We usually divide years into two parts :

- عادة ما نقوم بتقسيم السنين لجزئين لقراءتها :

2050 —————> twenty fifty

\* For the years 2000 , we say :

- عندما نقراً سنة ٢٠٠٠ ، نقول :

2000 Two thousand.

\* For the years 2001 - 2009 :

- لقراءة السنين ٢٠٠١ حتى ٢٠٠٩

We say two thousand + number :

نقول ٢٠٠٠ + الرقم.

2002 —————> two thousand and two.

## Unit

11

## Speaking

## Talking about saving the environment :

التحدث عن حماية البيئة :

## Questions



- How can you help save our planet ?  
كيف يمكنك المساعدة في حماية كوكبنا ؟

- What should I do first ?  
ماذا يجب علي أن أفعل أولاً ؟

- Then, what should I do ?  
ثم ماذا يجب علي أن أفعل ؟

- How deep must it be ?  
كم يجب أن يكون العمق ؟

- Should I water it now ?  
هل يجب علي أن أقوم بالري الآن ؟

## Answers



- Well, I can plant a tree.  
- حسناً، بإمكانني أن أزرع شجرة.

- Trees help to keep our air healthy.  
- تساعد الأشجار في أن يبقى الهواء صحياً.

- First, wash an empty plastic pot. Secondly, put some small stones.  
- أولاً، قم بغسل إناء بلاستيك فارغ. ثانياً، قم بوضع بعض الأحجار الصغيرة.

- Fill the pot with soil and press your finger to make a small hole.  
- قم بملئ الإناء بالطين (التربة) و قم بالضغط باستخدام أصبعك لعمل حفرة صغيرة.

- It must be 2 centimetres.  
- يجب أن تكون ٢ سم.

- Yes.  
- نعم.



## Unit 12

## Speaking

## Describing and asking about jobs.

وصف الوظائف والسؤال عنها.

## Questions



• What does a/an (job) do ?

ماذا يفعل (وظيفة) ؟

• What's the job of a/an ..... ?

ما وظيفة ..... ؟

• You visit some interesting places, don't you ?

أنت تقوم بزيارة بعض الأماكن الشيقة.

أليس كذلك ؟

## Answers



- A dentist looks after people's teeth.

- يقوم طبيب الأسنان بالعناية بأسنان الأشخاص.

- An engineer designs machines.

- يقوم المهندس بتصميم الآلات.

- An accountant finds out how much money a business gets.

- يقوم المحاسب بإيجاد كم الأموال التي يحصل عليها العمل التجاري.

- A businessman works in an office.

- يقوم رجل الأعمال بأداء عمله داخل المكتب.

- Yes. At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea.

- نعم. في الوقت الحالي، أعمل في البحر الأحمر.

- Last year, I worked in Australia.

- العام الماضي، عملت في أستراليا.

- Before that, I worked in ..... .

- وقبل ذلك، عملت في ..... .

## Exercises on Language Functions

### 1. Complete the following dialogue :

**Hany** : What did you do last year on the holiday ?

**Ali** : I went (1) ..... in the Red Sea.

**Hany** : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing, too.

**Ali** : What (2) ..... rock climbing ?

**Hany** : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit (3) .....  
but I like trekking in the (4) .....

**Ali** : Me, too ! I like trekking in the mountains.

**Hany** : Are you going to try mountain biking, Ali ?

**Ali** : No, I'm not going to try mountain biking. It's very  
(5) ..... to ride a bike in the mountains.

**Hany** : I think you're right. Zip lining looks scary, too.

**Ali** : I think it looks fun !

### 2. Complete the following dialogue :

**Ola** : Good morning. Maha ?

**Maha** : Good morning. How are you today ?

**Ola** : I'm fine.

**Maha** : What shall we do on Saturday ?

**Ola** : Why don't we go rock (1) ..... ?

**Maha** : I'm not sure. It's quite dangerous. I'd (2) ..... to do  
a different activity.

**Ola** : Ok. How about (3) ..... basketball ?

**Maha** : I don't (4) ..... I'm not very tall.

**Ola** : ok, not rock climbing or basketball. I know ! Let's play  
(5) .....

**Maha** : Good idea ! I always enjoy playing tennis.



### 3. Complete the following dialogue :

**Tamer** : Hello ! Mohamed ?

**Mohamed** : Hello Tamer ! Can I ask you a question ?

**Tamer** : Sure.

**Mohamed** : What is a car made of ?

**Tamer** : That's a difficult question ! It's (1) ..... a lot of things

**Mohamed** : Like what ?

**Tamer** : For example, a car (2) ..... is made of metal and the (3) ..... are made of glass.

**Mohamed** : What are the seats (4) ..... of, where you sit ?

**Tamer** : I (5) ..... expensive car seats are made of leather.

**Mohamed** : Thank you, Tamer.

### 4. Complete the following dialogue :

**Interviewer** : What are you designing at the moment ?

**Ahmed** : I'm working on a project for houses in the future.  
They'll be different to our houses today.

**Interviewer** : In what ways (1) ..... they be different ?

**Ahmed** : Well, I think we'll need more (2) ..... in the future, but there won't be much space. So the garden will be on the (3) ..... .

**Interviewer** : A garden on the roof, great !

**Ahmed** : And I think people will all use electric cars in the future, So there'll be chargers for electricity car next to the house.

**Interviewer** : How will people get their electricity ?

**Ahmed** : There'll be lots of solar panels and a wind turbine.  
They'll make (4) ..... .

**Interviewer** : Great ! What else will be different (5) .....  
2050 ?

**Ahmed** : Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.

## 5. Complete the following dialogue

**Teacher** : Is there anyone who wants to help to save our planet ?

**Student** : Yes, I am.

**Teacher** : Then, (1) ..... can you do ?

**Student** : I can plant a (2) .....

**Teacher** : Well, how will you do that ?

**Student** : (3) ..... , I will have a plastic pot.

**Teacher** : Go on !

**Student** : Secondly, I will (4) ..... the pot with soil.  
Then make a hole to put the seed.

**Teacher** : How (5) ..... must it be ?

**Student** : I must be 2 centimetres.

## 6. Complete the following dialogue :

**Presenter** : What's the best thing about your job ?

**Interviewee** : I help to (1) ..... the plants.

**Presenter** : Oh, it's important to look after plants, (2) ..... it ?

**Interviewee** : (3) .....

**Presenter** : And what's the worst thing about your job ?

**Interviewee** : Every job has some bad things, doesn't it ?

**Presenter** : Yes, it (4) ..... . Let me ask  
(5) ..... you enjoy your job ?

**Interviewee** : Of course. I love it so much.

**Presenter** : Thank you.

**Interviewee** : You're welcome.



# Answers of Main Book (1<sup>st</sup> Prep.)

إجابات كتاب الشرح للصف الأول الإعدادي

## Unit (7)

### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. stadium      2. a. funfair
3. d. planetarium      4. c. aquarium
5. d. diary      6. a. exhibition
7. b. nervous

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. museum      2. b. alley
3. c. wheel      4. c. Area
5. b. statues      6. c. aged
7. a. shopping      8. c. had
9. c. took      10. a. uniform
11. a. moved      12. d. canteen

#### Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. yesterday      2. d. did
3. a. moved      4. c. had
5. c. yesterday      6. c. visited
7. c. feel      8. c. drove
9. d. bought      10. c. Did
11. d. see      12. b. leave

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. have (had)      2. go (went)

3. last (ago)      4. Did (Were)
5. do (did)      6. listen (listened)

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. swimming
2. c. salads
3. c. sister
4. a. sports

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. funfair      2. like
3. wheel      4. much
5. was

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. had      2. a. moved
3. c. make
4. a. bowling alley
5. b. canteen      6. a. friendly
7. b. planetarium
8. b. was      9. b. swam
10. d. eat

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is (was)      2. went (go)
3. next (last)      4. have (had)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.

### Lessons 3&4

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. island   | 2. c. cave     |
| 3. a. sailor   | 4. a. Jazz     |
| 5. c. storm    | 6. b. jungle   |
| 7. a. coconuts | 8. b. opinions |
| 9. b. trumpet  |                |

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. play      | 2. c. interviewer |
| 3. a. through   | 4. c. share       |
| 5. b. nearby    | 6. c. terrible    |
| 7. a. adventure | 8. b. rained      |
| 9. c. voice     | 10. c. musician   |
| 11. a. sinks    |                   |

#### Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. Are      | 2. a. Has       |
| 3. a. Does     | 4. a. Is        |
| 5. c. What     | 6. b. What time |
| 7. c. Which    | 8. c. Do        |
| 9. a. How many |                 |
| 10. b. Does    |                 |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has (Have)
2. How (What / Which)
3. many (much)

4. Why (How)
5. When (Where)
6. What (Who)

### General Exercises

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

- |              |       |
|--------------|-------|
| 1. favourite | 2. Do |
| 3. don't     | 4. to |
| 5. Who       |       |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. a. music  | 2. c. rocks |
| 3. d. voice  | 4. a. sink  |
| 5. a. down   | 6. c. nuts  |
| 7. b. clever | 8. c. Are   |
| 9. c. What   | 10. b. Who  |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. play (to play) | 2. Did (Do)   |
| 3. into (on)      | 4. does (has) |

4. Write a paragraph of **EIGHTY (80)** words on :

Student's own answer.

### Lessons 5&6

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. c. stadium | 2. a. peppers |
| 3. b. team    | 4. d. theatre |



### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. kind                      2. c. really
3. d. woke                    4. b. closed
5. b. working                6. b. have
7. a. windy

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. my father
2. c. Saturday
3. d. an hour
4. c. terrible

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. fantastic / my favourite
2. go                      3. have
4. who                    5. did

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. sailor            2. b. windy
3. a. Traditional
4. b. cooking    5. c. ticket
6. a. sinks            7. b. terrible
8. a. although    9. b. went
10. b. were

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tomorrow (Yesterday)
2. is (was)
3. sees (see)            4. go (went)

### Test on Unit 7

#### A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. watching sports
2. b. science
3. c. 5
4. d. busy

#### B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. terrible                      2. up
3. What                        4. breakfast
5. closed

#### C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. He arrived on the island.
2. It is an adventure story.
3. Because he wanted a warm place to sleep.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. food            5. c. island
6. b. rocks

#### D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Museum    2. a. dead
3. b. decisions    4. c. riding

5. a. terrible      6. d. called  
7. a. floats      8. b. watched  
9. a. did      10. b. because

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. was (is)  
2. listens (listened)  
3. and (but)  
4. don't (haven't)

**E. Writing**

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**

**Unit (8)**

**Lessons 1 & 2**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. population      2. a. country  
3. c. road  
4. c. measurements  
5. c. tunnel      6. a. bridges  
7. b. crowded

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. modern      2. b. narrow  
3. b. high      4. c. guess  
5. d. capital      6. a. Tower  
7. b. did      8. c. visitors  
9. b. busy      10. a. empty

**Exercises on Language**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. d. higher  
2. a. more difficult  
3. c. longer  
4. a. more beautiful  
5. a. colder than  
6. c. prettier than  
7. b. richer  
8. c. more crowded  
9. d. nearer  
10. a. warmer than

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. longest (longer)  
2. easy (easier)  
3. tallest (taller)  
4. nicest (nicer)

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 1 & 2**

**1. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. course      2. high  
3. About      4. long  
5. old

**2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. taller      2. a. nearer  
3. c. worst      4. b. deep  
5. a. traffic      6. d. describe  
7. b. many      8. c. tourists  
9. a. worse      10. c. longer



**3. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. fast (faster)    2. then (than)
3. high (higher)
4. beautiful (more beautiful)

**4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**

**Lessons 3&4**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. suspension    2. b. sunset
3. c. view    4. b. climbing
5. c. achievements

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. d. ugly    2. b. expensive
3. a. high    4. b. across
5. b. think    6. d. of
7. b. in    8. d. with
9. c. opinion

**Exercises on Language**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. widest
2. d. the most difficult
3. a. quieter    4. c. the nicest
5. b. the best
6. d. the most boring
7. c. the biggest
8. a. largest    9. d. less
10. d. the most exciting
11. c. most

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. busier (busiest)
2. more (most)
3. better (best)
4. most (more)

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 3 & 4**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. widest    2. a. May
3. c. 67.36    4. c. Island

**2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. more    2. b. biggest
3. c. to    4. c. crowded
5. c. floor    6. c. give
7. d. dangerous    8. a. noisy
9. a. like    10. c. opinion

**3. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. much (many)    2. more (most)
3. good (best)    4. long (wide)
5. the more (the most)
6. How (What)    4. never (ever)

**Lessons 5&6**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. competition    2. a. valuable
3. b. entrance    4. a. design
5. b. treasures    6. b. columns
7. c. display

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. b. space  | 2. d. welcomed |
| 3. b. reason | 4. c. century  |
| 5. b. spend  | 6. b. same     |
| 7. d. allow  | 8. a. popular  |

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 5 & 6**

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. kings    | 2. a. tourists |
| 3. b. quietest | 4. d. day      |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. d. about          | 2. c. historical |
| 3. c. popular        |                  |
| 4. b. crowded        |                  |
| 5. b. most difficult |                  |
| 6. a. easiest        | 7. c. deep       |
| 8. d. subject        | 9. c. oldest     |
| 10. a. protect       |                  |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| 1. most (the most)                |
| 2. quieter (quietest)             |
| 3. better (best) 4. fast (faster) |

4. Write a paragraph of **EIGHTY (80)** words on :  
Student's own answer.

**Test on Unit 8**

**A. Listening**

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. In Cairo
2. c. walking
3. d. 2019
4. b. The river

**B. Language Functions**

2. Complete the following dialogue :

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. walking | 2. long   |
| 3. widest  | 4. course |
| 5. time    |           |

**C. Reading Comprehension**

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. It is about the Grand Egyptian Museum.
2. Valuable objects.
3. Because the old one did not have space for objects.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |               |            |
|-----------------|---------------|------------|
| 4. b. expensive | 5. b. smaller | 6. a. near |
|-----------------|---------------|------------|

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. c. crowded | 2. b. suspension |
|---------------|------------------|



- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 3. d. ugly    | 4. a. Bridge    |
| 5. c. space   | 6. d. treasures |
| 7. c. columns | 8. c. quietest  |
| 9. c. nicest  | 10. b. because  |

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. long (the longest)
2. more (the most)
3. good (better)
4. tallest (taller)

**E. Writing**

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**

**Unit (9)**

**Lessons 1 & 2**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. windsurfing | 2. c. climbing  |
| 3. c. tent        | 4. a. negotiate |
| 5. b. trekking    | 6. a. sailing   |
| 7. b. diving      | 8. d. journey   |

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. dangerous | 2. b. went      |
| 3. b. try       | 4. c. takes     |
| 5. c. water     | 6. b. scary     |
| 7. b. guide     | 8. b. equipment |
| 9. a. Bedouins  | 10. a. first    |
| 11. d. camel    |                 |

**Exercises on Language**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. d. go                | 2. b. am       |
| 3. b. going             | 4. b. going to |
| 5. b. are going to go   |                |
| 6. c. is going to       |                |
| 7. c. is going to rain  |                |
| 8. b. win               |                |
| 9. c. am going to crash |                |
| 10. b. is going to      |                |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. don't (am not)
2. Will (Are)
3. slept (sleep)
4. going to (am going to)

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 1 & 2**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. In Dahab
2. c. with her family
3. c. Try rock climbing
4. a. This afternoon

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. mountains
2. No
3. What
4. Why
5. time

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. plans      2. a. climbing
3. c. exciting    4. d. guide
5. b. Bedouin
6. c. windsurfing
7. b. journey
8. a. 'm going to travel
9. d. to do
10. d. is going to travel

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. last (next)
2. sleeping (to sleep)
3. from (of)
4. go (going)

**Lessons 3 & 4**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. transport      2. b. dark
3. a. article      4. b. railway
5. a. sunny

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. came      2. b. put
3. c. sounds    4. c. made
5. c. take      6. b. do
7. d. weather    8. a. British
9. b. fell      10. c. wind
11. c. foggy      12. b. adventure
13. b. taught    14. d. snow

**Exercises on Language**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. ourselves    2. b. himself
3. d. myself      4. a. yourself
5. b. itself      6. b. themselves
7. b. herself    8. a. yourself
9. d. by          10. c. herself
11. d. themselves

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. himself (myself)
2. herself (itself)
3. himself (herself)
4. themselves (himself)

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 3 & 4**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. yesterday    2. c. sunny
3. a. Yes, we did
4. c. Dark clouds

**2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. article      2. a. challenge
3. c. hurt          4. b. wet
5. c. snow      6. a. lining
7. b. made      8. c. yourself
9. d. themselves
10. b. herself

**3. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. itself (himself)
2. herself (yourself)



3. himself (herself)
4. themselves (ourselves)

4. Write a paragraph of **EIGHTY (80)** words on :  
Student's own answer.

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d** :

1. a. Basketball    2. b. album
3. c. magazines    4. d. beach

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d** :

1. c. respect    2. c. about
3. a. forms    4. c. made
5. c. looking    6. b. Dear
7. b. do    8. d. reply
9. b. mistakes    10. a. advantages
11. b. make    12. a. special

#### Exercise on Speaking Corner

Complete the following dialogue :

- try    2. about
- at    4. let's
- when

### General Exercises

### Lessons 5 & 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d** :

1. a. Maher
2. b. Alexandria
3. c. Tomorrow
4. a. train

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. do    2. Yes
3. No    4. Where
5. How often

3. Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d** :

1. b. go    2. c. How about
3. d. themselves
4. a. made    5. a. excited
6. d. introduction
7. b. opinion
8. c. hobby    9. b. forms
10. c. do

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. spending (spend)
2. see (seeing)
3. playing (to play)
4. in (at)

### Test on Unit 9

#### A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d** :

1. b. South Africa
2. a. tomorrow
3. a. Yes, there's
4. b. an adventure

#### B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. was    2. with
3. How long    4. dangerous
5. move

### C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. A friend's visit.
2. By the beach.
3. Student's own answer.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. hope      5. c. grandad
6. d. a, b & c

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. trekking      2. b. adventure
3. c. zip            4. c. guide
5. b. skill           6. a. equipment
7. d. towel          8. d. themselves
9. d. 'm going to
10. d. is she going to

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. doing (do)
2. you (yourself)
3. me (myself)
4. flying (to fly)

### E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.

### Unit (10)

#### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. cushions      2. a. wall
3. b. tap              4. d. roof

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. plastic          2. c. wood
3. c. television      4. d. metal
5. b. wallet          6. b. main
7. b. bricks          8. b. colour
9. c. ovens           10. c. on
11. a. wool

#### Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. are              2. c. is
3. d. made           4. a. 's
5. d. it's              6. a. weren't
7. c. were            8. b. was
9. c. made           10. b. weren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. were (was)      2. are (is)
3. is (are)          4. some (any)



### General Exercises

#### Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. metal
2. c. windows
3. a. plastic
4. a. seats

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. objects    2. b. wood
3. d. Age    4. a. Cushions
5. b. village    6. a. oven
7. c. tap    8. c. were
9. c. any    10. c. of

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. by (of)    2. it (it is)
3. no (any)
4. were (were not)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.

#### Lessons 3 & 4

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. electric
2. b. Solar panels
3. d. Architects    4. b. materials
5. b. Driverless    6. b. earthquake

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. take    2. b. safer
3. b. drive    4. b. drive
5. c. teachers    6. c. igloo
7. b. keep    8. c. Space
9. d. warm    10. c. cool
11. c. rectangular
12. a. circle

#### Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. will    2. d. use
3. c. be    4. b. get
5. d. have    6. a. won't
7. d. use    8. b. look
9. b. will have
10. a. will

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. been (be)
2. being (be)
3. goes (go)
4. took (take)

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. in the future
2. c. Robots

3. b. plastic
4. b. plastic bricks

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. an architect    2. what
3. doing            4. the gardens
5. why

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. electricity
2. b. sun            3. c. Driverless
4. d. Rockets    5. b. earthquake
6. a. warm        7. b. dream
8. c. will be      9. c. be
10. a. use

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. to have (have)
2. aren't (will)
3. goes (go)
4. were (be)

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**

**Lessons 5 & 6**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. creative        2. b. amazing
3. c. technology    4. b. timeline

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. moved            2. c. look
3. c. down            4. b. detail
5. b. make            6. b. with
7. d. make

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 5 & 6**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. 2018
2. b. the Red Sea
3. a. Cairo
4. c. ride

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. in
2. c. will you have
3. b. were
4. b. imagination
5. b. creative
6. b. League    7. b. African
8. a. fun        9. a. plan
10. c. imagine

**3. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. on (in)            2. had (have)
3. on (in)            4. on (down)

**4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**



## Test on Unit 10

### A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Cairo
2. a. El Mokawloon
3. c. 2010
4. a. Basel

### B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Ancient      2. When
3. weren't      4. By
5. From

### C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Round Houses.
2. Yes, because they were strong and has space.
3. Snow or rain falls from the roof.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. at the top
5. a. a round building
6. b. shapes

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. painted      2. a. make
3. b. valley      4. a. oven
5. c. modern      6. b. panels
7. a. amazing      8. a. will
9. c. any      10. d. travel

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. used (use)      2. is (are)
3. it's (is it)
4. hundred (thousand)

### E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of **EIGHTY (80)** words on :  
Student's own answer.

## Unit (11)

### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. whale      2. c. turtles
3. c. Shark      4. b. octopus
5. b. environment      6. b. recycle
7. b. planets      8. d. coral reefs
9. d. jellyfish      10. c. poisonous

#### Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. protect      2. c. shell
3. d. tails      4. d. loses

5. b. danger      6. b. goes  
7. d. hungry      8. c. take  
9. d. from      10. c. throw away  
11. b. text

### Exercises on Language

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. feel      2. d. feels  
3. b. becomes      4. c. see  
5. c. touch      6. c. if  
7. a. melts      8. c. have  
9. d. loses      10. b. Turn  
11. b. go      12. a. laugh

#### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. boils (boil)      2. made (make)  
3. Where (When / If)  
4. wearing (wear)  
5. turned (turns)

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 1 & 2

#### 1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Shark      2. live  
3. shell      4. protects  
5. sting

#### 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. stings      2. d. teeth  
3. b. environment  
4. a. octopus      5. c. poisonous  
6. c. use something again  
7. b. planet      8. d. must  
9. a. save      10. d. it rains

#### 3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. 'll feel (feel)  
2. mustn't (must)  
3. shouted (shout)  
4. might happen (will happen)

#### 4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on : Student's own answer.

### Lessons 3 & 4

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. reserves      2. b. pots  
3. d. ground      4. a. soil  
5. b. hole      6. c. seed

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. make      2. c. into  
3. b. about      4. c. of  
5. b. doing      6. b. share  
7. b. Making      8. c. with  
9. c. keep      10. b. planet  
11. c. warm      12. c. make

### Exercises on Language

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. must      2. a. mustn't  
3. c. take      4. a. walk  
5. b. mustn't      6. a. be



7. d. do      8. c. should  
9. d. mustn't   10. a. must  
11. c. mustn't

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. came (come)  
2. must (mustn't)  
3. made (make)  
4. cleaned (clean)

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 3 & 4**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. c. save      2. b. planet  
3. a. Trees    4. b. air

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. reserve      2. see  
3. animals    4. food  
5. important

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. frighten    2. b. reserves  
3. a. healthy    4. c. empty  
5. b. hole        6. c. seed  
7. d. rubbish    8. a. Listen  
9. a. forget      10. c. much

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. watered (water)  
2. sharing (share)  
3. found (find)  
4. must (mustn't)

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**

**Lessons 5&6**

**Exercise on Key Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. writer      2. a. skeleton  
3. b. fishermen   4. c. respect  
5. b. gloves      6. a. headphones  
7. d. snack

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. worried      2. c. line  
3. d. took        4. b. skeleton  
5. c. main        6. b. up  
7. a. role         8. a. weak  
9. d. teach

**General Exercises**

**Lessons 5 & 6**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. a. Fisherman  
2. c. catch fish  
3. c. One day  
4. a. at the end of

**2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. d. Brave      2. b. skeleton  
3. b. dangerous  
4. c. shark      5. b. ticket



6. c. gloves      7. b. come back  
8. a. What      9. a. clean  
10. b. mustn't

**3. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. cleans (clean)  
2. doing (to do)  
3. study (to study)  
4. threw (throw)

**4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**

**Test on Unit 11**

**A. Listening**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. a. The shark  
2. c. The shark  
3. c. A new one grows  
4. c. 20.000

**B. Language Functions**

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Where      2. pots  
3. do      4. Fill  
5. water

**C. Reading Comprehension**

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Dangers of plastic on the environment.

2. They are useful but sometimes poisonous.  
3. Because they eat plastic.

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. b. places by the sea  
5. c. papers and glass  
6. d. death

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. stings      2. c. follow  
3. b. should I do  
4. b. tired  
5. d. Throw away  
6. b. planet  
7. b. environment  
8. b. centre  
9. a. roads      10. c. nature

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. must (mustn't)  
2. we should (should we)  
3. to eat (eat)  
4. rained (rains)

**E. Writing**

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.**



## Unit (12)

### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. accountant
2. d. photographer
3. b. architect      4. c. writer
5. d. scientist      6. b. dentist
7. c. businessman
8. c. computer programmer
9. c. designs
10. c. businesswoman
11. d. pilot      12. b. teacher
13. b. a marine biologist

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. look      2. b. results
3. d. dive      4. c. at
5. a. goals      6. c. in
7. b. name

#### Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. who      2. a. who
3. b. who      4. c. isn't it
5. a. doesn't she
6. b. shouldn't you
7. d. aren't they
8. c. doesn't      9. b. can't you
10. c. watched      11. a. does she
12. a. speaks

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. doesn't (don't)
2. does (is)
3. when (who)
4. don't (didn't)

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. the ocean      2. c. ocean
3. b. animals
4. c. marine biologist

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. teacher      2. Where
3. teach      4. How
5. far

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. scores      2. a. engineer
3. c. photographer
4. a. protect
5. b. Nurses      6. b. terrible
7. d. results
8. d. will you      9. b. doesn't he
10. a. were there

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. was (is)      2. do (don't)
3. would (will)
4. isn't she (aren't they)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.



### Lessons 3&4

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. b. pass      | 2. d. university |
| 3. b. Education | 4. c. apartment  |
| 5. c. get       | 6. c. pottery    |
| 7. b. earn      |                  |

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. b. another  | 2. c. plans  |
| 3. c. work     | 4. c. get    |
| 5. b. Making   | 6. b. local  |
| 7. d. African  | 8. b. sell   |
| 9. c. practise | 10. b. catch |

#### Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. gets           | 2. c. won't learn |
| 3. b. see            | 4. b. will        |
| 5. c. have           | 6. a. won't       |
| 7. d. visit          | 8. c. won't go    |
| 9. a. be             | 10. b. get        |
| 11. b. will you feel |                   |
| 12. b. Will          |                   |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. lived (live) | 2. would (will) |
| 3. goes (go)    | 4. being (be)   |

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. c. baskets | 2. a. earn  |
| 3. b. Ghana   | 4. b. women |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. pass      | 2. c. drive       |
| 3. b. got       | 4. d. very old    |
| 5. b. adult     | 6. c. earn        |
| 7. a. jewellery | 8. d. 'll study   |
| 9. a. visit     | 10. a. don't have |

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. I'm (will)   | 2. do (will)    |
| 3. Would (will) | 4. will be (is) |

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.

### Lessons 5&6

#### Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. technology | 2. b. illnesses |
| 3. c. cures      | 4. c. apps      |
| 5. a. robots     | 6. c. doctor    |

#### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |            |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. play | 2. a. countryside |
| 3. c. plan | 4. b. revise      |



5. b. make                      6. b. same  
7. b. exciting                8. b. make  
9. d. flies                      10. b. sailors

### General Exercises

#### Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. plans                      2. a. the guitar  
3. c. design                    4. c. Next year

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Voluntary                2. c. plan  
3. b. job                        4. b. hopeful  
5. a. Technology               6. b. Robots  
7. c. countryside              8. c. to design  
9. c. years' time  
10. b. won't catch

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is (isn't)                    2. got (gets)  
3. go to (am going to)  
4. going (go)

### Test on Unit 12

#### A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. An engineer  
2. c. In a factory  
3. d. b & c                      4. a. Yes, it is.

#### B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. marine biologist

2. life animals    3. What  
4. Why do you go diving ?  
5. interesting

#### C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Traditional business.  
2. Egypt, Kenya and Ghana.  
3. Yes, because they are beautiful.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. d. internet    5. c. get  
6. d. skills

#### D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. cures                      2. b. pass  
3. d. plans                      4. c. traditional  
5. a. apartment               6. c. diving  
7. c. accountant               8. a. are they  
9. d. will they                  10. c. drives

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I'd (will)                    2. I'd (will)  
3. would (will)               4. which (who)

#### E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
Student's own answer.